# Open Research Online 

The Open University's repository of research publications and other research outputs

## Applications of numerical analysis in navigation

## Thesis

How to cite:
Williams, Roy (1994). Applications of numerical analysis in navigation. PhD thesis The Open University.

For guidance on citations see FAQs.
(c) 1994 The Author

Version: Version of Record

Copyright and Moral Rights for the articles on this site are retained by the individual authors and/or other copyright owners. For more information on Open Research Online's data policy on reuse of materials please consult the policies page.

APPLIGATIDNS DF
NUMERICAI ANALYSIS IN
NAVIGATION
7y
ROY WIILIAMS
Bachelor of Sclence (London University) Bachelor of Philosophy (Open University)

THESTS PRESENTED FQR DOETOR OF PHIIDSOPFY IN
APPIIED MATHEMATICS
24tM MAY 1004

## - CONTENTS -

0 - INTRODUCTION ..... 1

- PARTI 1
APPLICATION OF NUMERICAL METHODS INNAVIGATION
1 - THE GEDETRY OF THE EARTH ..... 10
2 - TAVIGATING ALONG A LOYODROMIC CURVE OY THE SURFACE OF A SPHERE ..... 17
3 - navigating alowg a loxodromic curve on the SURFACE OF A SPHEROID ..... 37
4 - havigatifg along the geodesic path betweer TVO POINTS ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHERE ..... 54
5 - havigating along the geodesic path betveey THO POINTS ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHEROID ..... 72
6 - NAVIGATIFG ALONG THE GEODESIC PATH BETMEEY THD NEARLY ANTIPODEAI POINTS ON THE EQUATOR OF A SPHERDID ..... 96
7 - NAVIGATING ALONG THE GEODESIC PATH BETWEEI TWD HEARLY ANTIPODEAN POIMTS AWAY FROM THE EQUATOR OF A SPHEROID ..... 106
8 - COMPUTATION OF ASTRONOMICAL FIXES ..... 116
9 - COMPUTING THE OBSERVED PGSITION FROM THE OBSERVATION OF A SINGLE BODY ..... 128
- PART Z -
DIRECT SPLINE APPROXINATIONS TO INTEGRALS
10 - DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE APPROXINATION TO AN INTEGRAL ..... 149
11 - hIGHER ORDER DIRECT SPLINE APPROXIMATONS TO AN INTEGRAL ..... 164
12 - CONCLUSION ..... 177
-     - REFERENCES ..... 183
- APPENDICES
187
A1 - TRANSFORNATIOY OF EQUATION (5.4) TO (5.5)
188
az - a table of latitude parts189


## ABSTRACT OF THESIS <br> "APPLICATIONS OF NUMERICAL AHALYSIS IN NAVIGATION" by

ROY WILLIAMS
PRESENTED FOR THE DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY DEGREE II APPLIED MATHEMATICS
July 1994
Part one of the thesis contains an analysis of the methods of computation in navigation. We start with loxodromic navigation and, although this subject is a well documented, we make a positive attempt to analyse the subject matter using the methods of differential geometry. We then turn to the problem of shortest path curves and set out an alternative method of solving the problem of navigating along the arc of a great circle on the surface of a sphere which can be generalised to other surfaces. In particular, a contribution made by the thesis is an analysis of the problem of navigating along shortest path geodesic arcs on the surface of a spheroid which introduces an algebraic representation of the geodesic curve by solving Clairaut's equation using a cylindrical transformation. Ve are therefore able to compute the the coordinates of the positions of points along the path of the geodesic and the length of arc along the path of the geodesic curve can then be computed step by step between these points by a numerical method - the Direct Cubic Spline method which was first introduced by this author in the Bachelor of Philosophy thesis in 1982 and is developed further in part 2 of this thesis. We apply this method also to the special problem of couputing the distance along the shortest path between nearly antipodean points on the surface of a spheroid.
Ve analyse the problem of computing an observer's position on the surface of the Earth using astronomical observations and show how a position locus is distorted when it is transferred over the surface. We offer a method of computing the observer's position by a series of observations of a single astronomical body taken over a comparitively short period of time and which does not necessarily include an observation at the time of meridian passage of the body.

In part two of the thesis we discuss the Direct Spline approximation to integrals and give some error bounds. The Direct Cubic Spline is a step by step method of fitting a cubic spline to the integral of a function directly which computes the value of the integral of the function step by step between the data points which need not be evenly spacied. We extend the idea to splines of higher order and give the formulae from which they may be obtained but we show that, except for a particular special form of the direct quartic spline, the higher order direct splines do not yield algorithms for computing integrals which are as efficient as the Direct Cubic Spline.

## - 0 -

INTRODUCTION

The Science of Navigation has entered the electronic age with a great deal of enthusiasm and energy. Orbitting man made satellites have, to a large extent, replaced the stars in the attentions of a modern navigator and it is the orbits of these satellites, rather than the rotation of the heavens, which now tend to control the pattern by which the observer's position is fixed during the day. The science is moving forward at a fast rate. Radio position fixing systems, which were created rapidly in the years immediately following the second world war (many as a result of methods developed during that period out of necessity) and which, for the science of navigation, seemed to have made such great strides forward at the time, have been and gone and are now obselete, historical even. The new age of space travel (again largely through the necessity, has helped to produce compact computer controlled positon fixing systems with built in computational procedures. These are systems which not only keep the observer informed of his present position but which also hold his history file and which update his travel plans.

During this time we have not perhaps paused to think how the classical methods of navigation, particularly the mathematics, could be reviewed to give a modern outlook to the subject. Even today, some educational programs, particularly in seagoing navigation, seem to be designed purposely to avoid the use of the calculus. For this reason methods are still in use which are only approximations. Due to the advent of modern computing devices, which relieve the tedium of long computations and the possibility of errors, this is no longer necessary. Many problems, which seemed algebraically and numerically intractable previously, can now be treated as a routine and, consequently, many aspects of the mathenatical analysis can also be reviewed and perhaps improved.

In this thesis, therefore, this 18 our theme, Ve have taken the opportunity to introduce some new numerical methods of our own which we find to have particularly useful applications in navigation and
we have used the methods of differential geometry to make what we feel is a reasonably full analysis of the methods of navigation when applied to the sphere and the spheroid. This has, in turn, lead us to make what we feel are some contributions to the mathematical theory.

Part 1 of the thesis 15 concerned with the application of numerical methods in navigation, paying due attention to the underlying mathematical models used. There does not seem to be any written exposition in navigation which adopts a rigourous mathenatical approach to the subject. It is the purpose in the early chapters of this thesis, therefore, to correct this. Ve adopt two models for the shape of the Earth - the spherical model and the spheroidal nodel and, using the methods of differential geometry, show how the familiar navigational formulae are derived. The spherical model is not such a bad approximation when applied to the problems in navigation, if it used consistently, but, in practice, this has not been so and the habit developed where elements conputed from different models have been used in the same formula. For example, this mistake was actually made in two different publications of nautical tables. A correction to apply to the Mean Latitude to give Mddle Latitude for an observer travelling along the arc of a loxodrome (rhumb line) was computed when middle latitude was determined using a formula which was given as

$$
\operatorname{Cos}(\text { Middle Latitude })=\frac{\text { Difference of latitude }}{\text { Difference of Meridional Parts }}
$$

As 15 well known, difference of latitude is the number of ininutes of arc on the meridian of a sphere but the difference of meridional parts used to comple the above mentioned correction table was a table computed from spheroid data. The middle latitude correction table was published through a number of editions and this went apparently unnoticed but it seems that the theory behind the method of computation known as "Middle Latitude Sailing" was never really widely understood. If difference of latitude is replaced by the
meridian distance then the formula for middle latitude would be correct.

In chapter 1 we define the ways in which a position on the Earth's surface may be defined when both spherical and spheroidal models are used. The spheroidal model is a regular spheroid by which we mean that the spheroid is generated by revolving an ellipse about its minor axis and that this spheroidal model is used as a global model for the surface of the Earth. We set the Earth in a spherical coordinate system denoted in the standard form for these coordinates; $r, \theta, \beta$ where $\theta$ is the longitude and is the geocentric latitude. Since arc length and geodetic latitude are intrinsic properties of the surface we use the standard notation for intrinsic coordinates and denote arc length by $s$ and geodetic latitude by $\psi$.

In chapter 2, using the nethods of differential geometry, we analyse the problem of navigating along loxodrome on the surface of a sphere. We are concerned here to derive with mathematical rigour the famillar navigational formulae for the spherical model and, although the method is now only historical, we try to give a rigorous derivation of the theary behind the method known as "Middle Latitude Sailing". W.M.Smart' presented a complete analysis of Midde Latitude Sailing for both the sphere and the spheroid. In both cases he relies upon the computation of meridional parts but, in fact, on the surface of the sphere the problem can be solved approximately without meridional parts. In the case of the spheroid, however, the problem cannot really be solved without recourse to formulae provided by the method of Mercator Sailing so that the method does not exist independently.

Chapter 3 deals with the same problem for navigating on the surface of a spheroid. For comparatively small gains in accuracy this problem on the surface of the spheroid needs some fairly high powered numerical methods to aid its solution but it does stimulate a lot of theoretical interest and the best way ind a numerical
solution still promotes discussion in the pages of the Journal of Navigation. This author had a paper published in $1981^{2}$ concerning the computation of meridian distance and since then there have been others written on the same thene. The latest contribution was by Kitt C. Carlton Wippern in $1992^{3}$.

In chapter 4 we discuss the problem of navigating along the shortest paths on the surface of a sphere. These shortest paths are, of course, great circles and, although the methods of spherical trigonometry are well suited to many aspects of the solution of this problem, we show also that the problem can be also be solved very conveniently by defining a great circle in the form of a differential equation (Clairaut's equation) and solving this equation using numerical integration by the Direct Cubic Spline method. The direct cubic spline method was introduced in the Bachelor of Philosophy thesis by this author and is developed further in this thesis in chapter 10 . This method of numerical integration has the convenience of being a step by step method which computes intermediate points along the path sequentially, the distance between then, the overall distance from the starting point and the course at the internediate points. The intermediate points can be chosen by the navigator to coincide with the "way" points that would normally be chosen. For great circles the method gives results whose accuracy leaves nothing to be desired by the sea-going navigator even though it is a numerical "approximation". Although the methods of spherical trigonometry give exact formulae from which to compute the elements of the great circle, the numerical results from the direct cubic spline are indistinguishable and it can be argued that there is more computation to be done in the methods using spherical trigonometry. It is not the purpose, however, to compete with the methods of spherical trigonometry but to provide an alternative method of solution which can be generalised to other surfaces.

This, then, leads into chapter 5 where we solve the same shortest path problen on the surface of a spheroid by defining the geodesic
arc by means of Clairaut's equation as in chapter 4. There is, of course, a great deal more numerical computation needed. For navigators the most widely promulgated methods of solving this problem seem to be the correction methods where a correction is applied to the great circle distance on the sphere in order to determine the shortest distance between two points with corresponding positions on the surface of the spheroid. See, for instance, the publication by Paul D. Thomas ${ }^{4}$ published by the U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office. In the publications concerned with Geodetics the problem of computing the shortest distance on the surface of a spheroid is generally posed in two ways - the "direct" problem and the "inverse" problem. The "direct" problem is posed so that, given a starting position on the surface of the spheroid, an initial course (azimuth) and a distance travelled, we compute the final position when the path taken is the shortest path. The "inverse" problem is posed so that, given two points on the surface of the spheroid we compute the shortest distance between them. The direct problem is not one that is of ten posed by the navigator and the inverse problem $1 s$ only a partial answer to the navigator's quest. What the navigator needs is a systen of computation which will plot the path of the geodesic arc so that this path can be considered for suitability and so that the intermediate points can be plotted on a chart. In other words, given any longitude, the navigator would like to know the corresponding latitude where the geodesic arc crosses the meridian. One of the major expositions written on the problem of geodesic arcs on the surface of the spheroid was produced by Fichots. In that work Fichot says that, in general, the geodesic arc is not expressible in algebraic form : " ..Exception faite pour l'equator et les ellipses meridiennes, aucune de ces courbes n'est algebrique.. ". Ve have found no other author who contradicts this statement but we have opted to solve the problem by a method different to that which appears in the ifterature and to solve clairaut's equation using transformations which, in effect, project the geodesic arc onto the surface of a cylinder coaxial with the spheroid. There is a lot of manipulative algebra (details of which are shown in appendix 1) but, for the
effort，we find that，for a geodesic curve which reaches its vertex where the geocentric latitude is $⿴ 囗 ⿰ 丿 ㇄$ the geodesic curve is not the equator or a meridian then and $\theta$ are connected by the relationship

$$
\tan \phi=\tan \mu \cos \left[\mu(\beta)\left(\theta_{v}-\theta\right)\right]
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mu(\bar{p})=\frac{1}{u^{\prime}} \int_{0}^{\}^{\prime}} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-a^{2}\right)^{2}+\tan ^{2} q_{v} \sin ^{2} u}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+\tan ^{2} \beta_{v} \sin ^{2} u}} d u \\
& u^{\prime}=\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{\tan }{\tan }\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and a is the equatorial radius of the spheroid．When the surface is a sphere then the same equation applies and $\mu(\beta) \equiv 1$ ．

Lambert＊，paying tribute to Fichot，stated that，at that time（1942） the work by Fichot was the fullest exposition so far written on the subject of geodesic arcs on the surface of the spheroid and that there was no comparable work written in English．He went on to say that it was his intention to publish further work on the subject himself and，in particular，to publish work on the special problem of the shortest distance between nearly antipodean points．As far I can see，such a full exposition in English has not appeared．Papers appear regularly which continue to recommend improvements to the solution of the direct and inverse problems following an analysis of the problem simlar to that of Fichot．These methods of computation are really now very well developed．One of the more recent of these was written by Bowring7 who nlso deals with the special problen of the nearly antipodean points．

In chapter 6 we define what we mean by nearly antipodean points and show how，from our solution of Clairaut＇s equation，we can compute the shortest distance between two nearly antipodean points which both lie on the Equator．Ve find a particularly useful expression in simple form which gives the half period，$\theta_{p}$（the difference of longitude between two successive transits of the equator by the
geodesic), of a geodesic arc given the geocentric latitude, A, of its vertex. This expression is

$$
\theta_{p}=2 \oint_{0}^{1 / 2} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+\tan ^{2} \|_{v} \sin ^{-2} u}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+\tan ^{2} v_{v} \sin ^{2} u}} d u
$$

We also extend the application of the method to the ellipsoids with varying eccentricities and compute the periods of the geodesic curves on such surfaces. In chapter 7 we then formulate the general problem of computing the shortest distance between nearly antipodean points using the method of chapter 5 and the results of chapter 6 with respect to the values of the periods of geodesics with given vertices and show how this can be utilised in voyage planning at sea.

In chapter 8 we discuss the ways in which numerical methods can be applied to the computation of position from astrononical observations. There has been much interest shown in this aspect of navigation recently due, it seems, to the development of the leisure industry and the interest shown by people of strong technical background in scientific fields who are part of this new development. Although much of astronomical navigation may seem obselete in light of modern improvements to navigation brought on by the introduction of global position fixing systems from satellites it is still an interesting theoretical persuit. One of this author's contributions in this respect was contained in a paper published by the Journal of Favigation in which, in response to two other authors who made an over simplification of the problem of transferring a position circle, it was shown mathematically that the original position circle, when transferred, is no longer a circle but suffers a distortion. This may well account for problems which are encountered by an observer close to a pole of the Barth when taking astronomical observations - a large distortion of a transferred position circle takes place close to the pole when the
observer travels at an oblique angle to the meridian and this can be seen clearly from the plots of the transferred circles.

We extend this work on astronomical navigation into chapter 9 where we are particularly concerned with observations taken of a single body over a comparatively short period of time and from which, at a time chosen, we can compute the altitude and its rate of change. Given these two pieces of information we can then fix the observer's position. The classical situation in which this technique is applied is at the time of culmination when the maximum altitude of the observed body and the time that it occurs is computed from a sequence of observations taken over a period surrounding the time of the maximum. The technique is usually described graphically but was set in mathematical terms by Matti Rantas. This idea was extended by this authorio to find the altitude and its rate of change for any fixed time that the body was visible to the observer by observing the body over a period of about forty minutes surrounding the fixed time for which the observed position is required. The method described requires the smoothing of the observed altitude data and the fitting of a least squares function approximation which we then differentiate to find the rate of change. We try out two smoothing techniques; we experinent with a least squares trigonometric approximation and with the least squares orthogonal polynonial approximations of Forsythe''. The least squares trigonometric approximations give the better results on the data used.

In part 2 of this thesis we describe the Direct Cubic Spline. This is a variant of the familiar spline, used in a way that makes it particularly convenient for numerical integration. Its derivation will be found in chapter 10 with a more comprehensive error analysis than has appeared hitherto. Ve show that the direct cubic spline is a generalisation of Simpson's Rules which can be applied to compute the integral between any two ordinates and that the ordinates need not be evenly spaced. The method has been applied on many occasions in part one of the thesis, in particular, in chapter 3 , to the computation of meridian distance on the surface of the spheraid, in
chapter 4 to the step by step solution of the great circle problem and, in chapter 5 , to the step by step solution of the problem of navigating along the path of a geodesic curve on the surface of a spheroid. In part two there is also a discussion of some possible extensions of this idea to the higher order splines. The approach is described in detail in chapter 11. None of the algorithms for computing integrals using these direct higher order spline approximations produce very worthwhile results, however, with the exception of the quartic spline, used with a "borrowed" form for computing the "moments", which is efficient and which has been used by this author when applied to certain problems in ship stability.

For the time being, then, this is as far as we go. In particular (perhaps because of our own familiarity) we have found the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation to be a useful tool in our researches, particularly when applied to the solution of numerical problems in navigation and we can only hope that what is written here will also be of use or of interest to others.

This work began in collaboration with Professor J.E.Phythian before it was thought that $I$ should enter a formal course for the Doctor of Philosophy degree. Professor Phythian then becane my supervisor but, when he took up an academic post abroad, the direct supervision was taken over by Professor C.W.Clenshaw. I an greatly indebted to these two gentlemen for their meticulous reading, creative criticiam and supportive suggestions. Thus encouraged, the work has, $I$ believe, been undertaken and completed in a spirit of true philosophy.

```
PART ONE
APPIIGATIDNS
NUMERICAI METHODS IN
NAVIGATION
```

- 1 -

THE GEOMETRY OF
THE EARTH
1.1 THE SHAPE OF THE EARTH.

In the study of Navigation the simplest approxination adopted for the shape of the Earth is a sphere. This is a reasonable approximation, if it is used consistently, and introduces no serious errors in most cases. There are, however, some surprises when shortest path curves are required, for example when we need to find the shortest path between two nearly antipodean points. (Antipodean points are points which lie at the opposite extremities of a diameter). For reasons such as this we require a better approximation to the shape of the Earth and the next simplest approximation is a regular oblate spheroid. Generally, a spheroid is simply defined as a "sphere-1ike" surface but the regular spheroid is generated by revolving an ellipse, whose eccentricity is small, around the minor axis. This axis colncides with the axis of revolution of the Earth. The poles of the Earth, whether it is considered to be a sphere or a spheroid, are found at the points where the axis of revolution cuts the surface. The poles are designated Forth (I) and South (S). An observer sited above the North pole and looking down upon the surface would view the Barth to be rotating anticlockwise. See Figure 1.1.


FIGURE 1.1- THE EARTH AS A SPAERE.

In Figure 1.1 0 is the centre of the Earth and the equator (WGEG') is the circle on the surface of the Earth which is the locus of all points which are equidistant from both poles. The semicircle $\overline{\text { m }}$. $i s$ a meridian. A meridian is the curve of intersection with the Earth's surface of a plane through the axis of revolution. The equator bisects the meridians.

The second approximation, the spheroid, is a better approximation to the shape of the Earth but it does make the computations in Navigation much more complicated. Indeed, for manual computations, it is often too difficult to assume anything else but that the Earth is a sphere.

There $1 s$ some argument as to which single spheroid best suits the Earth's shape. Slightly different values are assigned to flattening, $f$, of the different spheroids and the agencies responsible to different governments for surveying sometines each adopt a distinct spheroid which, they feel, best suits the shape of the Earth as they recognise it. The flattening, fis given by

$$
f=\frac{a-b}{a}
$$

where a is the length of the semi major axis of the selected generating ellipse and $b$ is the length of its seni minor axis.

It is a fact that, in different geographical locations, the surface of the Earth $1 s$ better approxinated locally by one spheroid than another and so, in effect, the Earth is best approximated by a smooth union of different epheroids. The ocean basins, for instance, may each be fitted better by different spheroids although most books of nautical tables do stick to one spheroid which approximates the whole surface of the Earth. Globally, therefore, the Barth is almost invariably approximated by a regular spheroid, it is in the science of surveying that more local refinements are needed and practised. Some examples of the values assigned to the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse of the Terrestial Spheroid as determined at
different times and places can be found in the book by G. Bomfordia or in the publication known familiarly as "Bowditch"iz the full title of which is THE AMERICAN PRACTICAL NAVIGATOR.

On the surface of a spheroid the Equator and a meridian are defined In the same way as on the surface of a sphere. On the surface of a spheraid, however, whilst the Equator is still a circle, the meridians are ellipses. Instead of defining a spheroid by its flattening we more often (as we will here) define the spheroid by referring to the eccentricity of its meridional ellipses which are all identical in shape. The flattening, $f$, of the spheroid is related to the eccentricity, $e$, of its meridional ellipse by

$$
f=1-\sqrt{ }\left(1-e^{2}\right)
$$

We use the term "spheroid" because, in the case of the Earth, the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is small ( $\sim 0.08$ ) and, hence, the surface is still "Sphere-like". In the case of other planets, such as Jupiter, where the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is larger ( $\approx 0.3$ ) then the surface is more aptly referred to as an Ellipsoid.
1.2 DEFINIFG PDSITION OH THE SURFACE OF THE SPHERICAL EARTH MODEL.

On the surface of a sphere a circle defined by the intersection of the sphere with a plane through its centre is known as a GREAT CIRCLE and the unique great circle whose plane is perpendicular to the axis of revolution of the Earth is known as the equator. Any other circle on the surface of a sphere which is not a great circle is called a SMALL CIRCLE.

In the science of Javigation, where, in certain circumstances, the sphere is still often used as an approximation to the shape of the Earth, the position of a point is expressed in terms of its LATITUDE and LOIGITUDE. The latitude of all points on the equator is zero and the latitude of any other point $P$, on the surface of the sphere is defined by the angle at the centre of the sphere subtended by the
arc of the meridian through $P$ from the point $P$ to the point where the meridian through $P$ cuts the Equator. See Figure 1.2. In the Figure, $N$ is the Forth pole, $H$ is the axis of revolution and $E$ is the point where the meridian through $P$ cuts the Equator.
The angle is the LATITUDE of the point $P$.


FIGURE 1.2

A particular meridian is selected for which the longitude is zero. On the surface of the Earth this meridian is the Greenwich Meridian - the meridian which passes through the Greenwich Observatory. The longitude, $\theta$, then of any other point $P$ on the surface of the sphere representing the Earth is the angle between the planes through the axis of revolution of the Barth one of which contains the Greenwich meridian and the other the meridian through the point P. See Figure 1.3.

A circle on the surface of the sphere whose plane $1 s$ parallel to the equatorial plane is known as a PARALLEL OF LATITUDE so called because all points on this circle are in the same latitude. Bxcept for the equator, parallels of latitude are SMALL circles. In Figure 1.3 the arc $P^{\prime} P^{\prime}$ is a small circle.


S
FIGURE 1.3

In navigation and in geography latitude and longitude are expressed in degrees and minutes - latitude as north or south of the equator and longitude as east or west of the Greenwich meridian. The ranges are

$$
\begin{array}{rl}
900 \mathrm{~S} & 900 \mathrm{H} \\
180^{\circ} \mathrm{W} & <\theta
\end{array}
$$

To give a mathematical treatrent to the methods in lavigation we should express the angles in radians and, preferably, in the ranges
and

$$
-1 / 2 \pi \leqslant k \pi / 4 \pi \quad \text { (North Positive) }
$$

$$
0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2 \pi \quad \text { (East Positive) . }
$$

Distances on the surface of a sphere or a spheroid are expressed in a natural way in units of the length of one minute of arc of the Equator. The accepted value for this unit is 6087.2 feet or 1852 metres. This unit is known as the Geographical Mile and we will use it throughout in our treatment of navigational methods. There is another "mile" which is sometimes referred to as the "Iautical

Mile". This mile is a standard mile of 6080 feet and is the approximate length of one minute of arc of the meridian in the vicinity of Southern England. Some confusion has arisen in practice at sea because distances computed from engine revolutions or rotator logs have not been consistent. The errors have, however, been small and negligible in most cases.
1.3 DEFINIFG POSITION OR THE SURFACE OF THE SPHEROIDAL EARTH MODEL. Let the surface of the Earth be modelled by a regular spheroid whose meridians are family of ellipses of the same eccentricity and which share a common minor axis. At a point $P$ on this surface the angle subtended at the centre of the Earth by the arc of the meridian through $P$ from the equator to $P$ is the GBOCENTRIC LATITUDR. At the same point $P$ the angle at which the normal to the meridian at $P$ cuts the equatorial plane 18 the GEODETIC LATITUDB. See Figure 1.4.


FIGURE 1.4

In the Figure 1.4 :

- Is the GEOCEITRIC latitude
$y$ is the GEODETIC latitude and - and $y$ are connected by

$$
\tan y=\left(1-e^{2}\right) \tan y
$$

Where $e$ is the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse.

The longitude of a point $p$ is expressed in the same way as on the surface of a sphere.

On the surface of a regular spherold the Geodetic Latitude is also the Astronomical (Geographical) Latitude. The Geodetic Latitude is the term used by the surveyor. In local conditions such as mountainous regions, where abnormal gravitational effects upon a plumb line may be observed the normal to the surface is considered to lie along this plumb line. On the side of a montain , therefore,
a geographer, who is using a global approximation to the surface of the Earth, may find a slightly different value for the latitude of a particular point than the surveyor who is considering a local approximation to the same surface. For a complete discussion of this one should read the books by Cotter ${ }^{13}$ and Bonford'4. However, in Navigation we confine ourselves to computations on the surface of a regular spheroid which is a global approximation to the surface of the Earth.
-
NAVIGATING ALONG
A LOXODROMIC CURVE ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHERE

### 2.1 INTRODUCTIOH.

The science of navigation, although it is a numerical science, is presented in the reference texts in a manner which tends to be empirical rather than analytical. There is little evidence of mathematical rigour and little use is made of the techniques of the calculus. It is the purpose in this chapter, therefore, to analyse the methods of computation used in navigation by relating them to the results obtained by considering the differential geometry of the sphere and thereby to prove the formulae that are in common use. Some of these results and proofs can be found scattered through the pages of books on differential geometry but not always in a concise or complete form in books on navigation.
2.2 THE LOXODROMIC CURVE.

A LOXODROMB, known more familiarly to seafaring Havigators as a RHUMB LINE, is a curve on a surface of revolution which cuts all the meridians at the same angle.


Figure 2.1 shows a loxodrome on the surface of a sphere which cuts the meridians at an angle $\alpha$. To the seafaring Havigator it is a line of constant course and there are obvious reasons why it is desirable to cross the Oceans on such a line rather than to take the shortest
route which would be the first choice in most circumstances. Veather conditions are one such reason why a navigator might choose not to follow the shortest route to his destination and the flow of the Ocean currents are another. If we consider the particular example of the North Atlantic Ocean, for instance; from the Gulf of Mexico to the Western Approaches of the British Isles we have the "Gulf Stream which is a flow of warm water between the tropics and cooler northern climes. This current of water closely follows the great circle path so that any traffic from the UK or Vorthern Europe headed out from the English Channel to North American or the Caribbean Islands will oppose this current for a large part of the journey. It turns out that, on the direct route to the Caribbean Islands, in order to avoid the Gulf Stream, most ships will follow one constant course once they have cleared the English Channel even though this path will be longer in distance. In winter this has the added advantage that the ship will make quicker progress to the sduth and thus clear the stormy regions earlier. Ocean Routing is a sub branch of the science of Navigation which studies these matters in detail.

The loxodrome 16 an endless curve of finite length which, for every value of $\alpha: 0<\alpha<\pi / 2$, spirals to end linit point at the pole. When $\alpha=\pi / 4$, for instance, the length of the loxodrome from any initial point on the Equator to the pole is, for the spherical model,

## $\frac{a \pi \sqrt{2}}{2}$ <br> 2

where a is the radius of the sphere. (See Lipschutz's).

### 2.3 STEREOGRAPHIC PROJECTIOF OF A LOXODROMIC CURVB.

In general, under the Stereographic Projection, a point $P$ on the surface of a sphere is projected onto a tangent plane. The source of the projection is the point which is the antipode of the point of tangency. (Two points on the surface of a sphere are antipodes to each other when they lie at the opposite ends of the same diameter).

The stereographic projection is a conformal mapping and, in the stereographic projection of the Terrestial Sphere onto a polar plane, (a plane tangent to the pole) where the source of the projection is the opposite pole, the 1 mage of a loxodrome is an equiangular spiral. This is because, under the projection, angles are preserved and this is the one single and common property by which both curves can be defined. Figure 2.1 shows the projection from the South Pole, under the stereographic projection, of a point $P$ on the surface of the Terrestial Sphere to the point $P^{\prime}$ in the plane tangent to the North Pole.


FIGURE 2.2
STEREOGRAPHIC PROJECTION.

The stereographic projection is often used to map the Earth's polar regions. The meridians on the surface of the sphere are projected into the radial lines (in the polar plane) which are the intersections of the polar plane with the planes containing the meridians. If the initial line $(\theta=0)$ of polar coordinates in the polar plane corresponds with the Greenwich Meridian then the longitude on the surface of the Terrestial Sphere corresponds to the angular coordinate in the polar plane. Sinple considerations of
geometry in Figure 2.2 show that the radius, $r$, in the polar plane of the point $P^{\prime}$ from the pole, $H$, is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=2 a \tan (\pi / 4-/ / 2) \tag{2,1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where a is the radius of the Terrestial Sphere and ${ }^{\prime}$ is the latitude of the point $P$.

The stereographic projection of the surface of a sphere onto a tangent plane is a conformal maping which can be defined analytically (Struick's). We now show geometrically how anglea are preserved under the stereographic projection of the surface of a sphere onto the polar plane. Ve can use the essential geometrical features to show that, in a similar manner, we can project the surface of a spheroid onto the polar plane; this is also a conformal mapping.


FIGURE 2.3

The tangent plane to the sphere at point $P$ cuts the polar plane in a line through the point $T$ in the polar plane. This line (TS in Figure 2.3) 18 at right angles to the plane of the meridian through $P$ on the sphere and also at right angles to the projection of this meridian in the polar plane. From Figure 2.2 above we can deduce that the triangle PTP', which lies in the plane of the meridian through $P$, is isosceles so that $P T=P^{\prime} T$. This is a consequence of the fact that the angles TPP' and TP'P are both equal to $w / 4+\beta / 2$.

The tangent at $P$ to the loxodrome lies in the tangent plane through P. Let this tangent cut the polar plane in $T^{\prime}$. Clearly, the point $T^{\prime}$ lies on the line TS. See Figure 2.3.

Let the angle at $P$ in the triangle TPT' (Figure 2.3) be $\alpha$. If we consider the triangles $\mathrm{PTT}^{\prime}$ and $\mathrm{P}^{\prime} \mathrm{TT}^{\prime}$ then they are congruent since both are right angled at $T$, the side $T T^{\prime}$ is common and $P T=P T$ as we have seen. Hence the angle at $P^{\prime}$ in triangle $P^{\prime} T T^{\prime}$ is equal to $\alpha$ also. This is a general result because the tangent $\mathrm{PT}^{\prime}$ could be the tangent to any curve on the surface of the sphere through the point P.

This geometric proof can, of course, be applied just as well for a point $P$ in the Southern Hemisphere.

Conversely, it can be deduced from the foregoing that the above projection of the surface of the sphere is a conformal mapping if, and only if, the triangle PTP' in Figure $2.2(1)$ is 1soceles. In the projection of the surface of the spheroid onto its polar plane we can therefore make the mapping conformal if the equivalent of the triangle PTP' is also isosceles. This mapping is described in Chapter 3.

Under the stereographic projection of the surface of the sphere onto the polar plane, the equation of the image of the loxodrome in polar coordinates $1 s$

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=r_{0} \exp \left[-\left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right) \cot \alpha\right] \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where ( $r_{0}, \theta_{0}$ ) are the coordinates of the projection of some initial point $P_{0}$ on the loxodrome and $\alpha$ is the angle at which the loxodrome cuts the meridians on the surface of the sphere.

To prove this let $\Delta \Sigma$ be an element of the 1 mage of the loxodrome in the polar plane. Since angles are preserved under the stereographic projection then the angle, $\alpha$, at which the loxodrome cuts the meridians mugt be the same angle at which the image of the loxodrome cuts the radial 1 ines in the polar plane.

Figure 2.5 shows an element of the image of the loxodrone in the polar plane. Since the loxodrome is directed towards the pole then so is its image and, hence, corresponding to the element $\Delta s$ of the
loxodrome, we have $\Delta \Sigma$ ( $=\mathrm{PR}$ ) (triangle PQR - Figure 2.5). Also in Figure 2.5 we have $r . \Delta \theta(=P Q)$ along the arc of the circle

$$
r=\text { constant }
$$

and $-\Delta r \quad(=Q R)$ along the radial line $\quad \theta=$ constant.


FIGURE 2.5
an element of the image of a loxodrong.

From the triangle PQR (Figure 2.5) we see that

$$
\tan \alpha=-\frac{r \cdot \Delta \theta}{\Delta r}
$$

And, in the init as $\Delta \Sigma \rightarrow 0$ we have

$$
\frac{d r}{r}=-\cot \alpha d \theta
$$

Integrating from an initial point $P_{0}$ where $r=r_{0}$ and $\theta=\theta_{0}$ we find

$$
\ln r-\ln r_{0}=-\cot \alpha\left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right)
$$

which gives

$$
r=r_{0} \exp \left[-\left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right) \cot \alpha\right]
$$

as required.

### 2.4 NaVigating aloig the path of a loxodroni ol the surface of a SPHERE.

Let us consider that the Earth is a sphere on which the position of a point $P$ is determined by its latitude, $B$, and its longitude, $\theta$, where and $\theta$ are measured in radians. If a is the radius of the Earth then the distance along the meridian fron the Equator to $P$ is as and the distance along the parallel of latitude from the Greenwich Meridian to $P$ is $a \theta$ cos 1 . See Figure 2.6 where $I$ is the Horth Pole, $\mathbb{K}$ is an arc of the Greenwich Meridian, GE is an arc of the Equator and PG' is an arc of the parallel of latitude through $P$. PM, the perpendicular from $P$ to the axis of revolution is the radus of the parallel of latitude and $P M=a \cos \beta$


Let $a$ be the radius of the Earth. The distance between two points $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ on the same meridian whose latitudes are $\|_{1}$ and $\|_{2}$, respectively, and which is equal to $\left.a\left(\left\|_{2}-\right\|_{1}\right)\left(\beta_{2}\right\rangle \|_{1}\right)$ is known as the DIPFEREICE OF LATITUDE. The difference of latitude if, in fact, the angle $\|_{2}-1$ expressed in minutes.

Similarly, the distance along the equator between the feet of the meridians through two points $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ whose longitudes are $\theta_{1}$ and
$\theta_{z}$, respectively, and which is equal to $\left.a\left(\theta_{z}-\theta_{1}\right)\left(\theta_{z}\right) \theta_{1}\right)$ is known as the DIFFEREHCE OF LOHGITUDE. The difference of longitude is the angle $\theta_{z}-\theta_{1}$ expressed in minutes.

If we now consider a small element of length $\Delta s$ of a lazodrome through $P$ which cuts the meridians at an angle $\alpha$ then $\Delta f$ is the small increment in the latitude and $\Delta \theta$ is the small increment in the longitude which results from moving the small distance $\Delta \varepsilon$. Corresponding to this element $\Delta s$ we have a triangle PQR (Figure 2.7) in which $P Q(=\Delta s)$ is along the arc of the loxodrone, $Q R(=a \Delta \|)$ is along the meridian through $Q$ and $R$ and $P R(=a \cos \| \Delta \theta)$ is along the parallel of latitude through $P$. The angle at $P$ is equal to $\alpha$.


FIGURE 2.7
A SMALL ELEIEYT AS OF THE LOXODROME.

In the limit as $\Delta s \rightarrow 0$ the triangle $P Q R$ becomes a right angled triangle in which

$$
P Q=d s \quad P R=a \cos d \theta \quad \text { and } \quad Q R=a d
$$

It is from this triangle that we deduce the formulae that are relevant to an observer travelling along the path of a loxodrome.

### 2.5 THE MBRCATOR PROJBCTION,

The Mercator Projection is so called because it was introduced by Gerhard Mercator early in the 17 th century. According to Bowditch ${ }^{4}$, Mercator constructed his chart purely to satisfy the needs of the sea-going navigator who needed a chart on which his line of constant course (his "Rhumb line") would be a straight line.

On the surface of a sphere, along a parallel where the latitude is P, the ratio of the length of one minute of arc of the meridian to the length of one minute of longitude along the parallel is
sec : 1 .
If, then, the surface of the sphere 18 mapped onto another surface so that this ratio is preserved and, at the same time, the images of the meridians and parallels of latitude are also orthogonal then the angle of the rhumb line (loxodrome) will also be preserved.

Mercator achieved this by mapping the surface of the sphere onto the surface of an infinite cylinder, coasial with the sphere and of the same radius. Under this mapping, the meridians on the surface of the sphere are mapped into the meridians on the surface of the cylinder (which are straight parallel lines) and the parallels of latitude on the sphere are mapped into circles of equal radius on the surface of the cylinder. These circles are contained in planes perpendicular to the meridians. The length of arc of one minute of longitude is then constant on the surface of the cylinder. When the latitude if $\|$ therefore, the length of image on the cylinder of one minute of arc of the meridian on the sphere in units of the length of one minute of longitude on the cylinder must be equal to sec .

These image elements on the surface of the cylinder of the ninutes of arc of the meridian on the surface of the sphere becane known as "MERIDIOLAL PARTS". The first table of meridional parts was compiled by Edward Certaine in 1599 and it was froi this table of meridional parts that Mercator constructed his chart.

Considering that Certaine conpiled his table in the days before Leibniz or Newton we must assume that the entries in his table were computed in a manner similar to the following:

When the latitude $1 s$ and $n$ is the number of minutes of arc, then, if $M\left(\sigma_{n}\right)$ is the sum of the meridional parts, we find

$$
M\left(\phi_{n}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sec \phi_{1}
$$

The mapping that Mercator would then have used to construct his chart would have been defined by

$$
\nabla_{n} \rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sec \|_{1} \quad \theta \rightarrow \theta
$$

In modern terms, if we subdivide the meridian of the sphere by a finer mesh so that $\|_{1}-1=h$ and let $h \rightarrow 0$ then we find:

$$
\begin{equation*}
M(\phi)=\oint_{0}^{\oint} \sec u d u \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the Mercator projection of the surface of the sphere onto the surface of the cylinder is given by

$$
\beta \quad \oint_{0}^{6} \sec u d u \quad \theta+\theta \text {. }
$$

so that, on the chart, (which is the cylinder unrolled") the meridians are napped into parallel lines and a loxdrome 18 mapped into a sraight line which cuts the mappings of the meridians at the same constant angle as the loxodrome itself cuts the meridianz on the surface of the sphere. Figure 2.8 is an illustration of a Mercator chart.


FIGURE 2.8-A MBRCATOR CHART

The Mercator projection is sometimes referred to as a cylindrical projection" which can be misleading, for, although the Mercator projection 15 the mapping of the suriace of a sphere onto the surface of the infinite coaxial cylinder of the sama radius, we cannot present this mapping visually. The Cylindrical Projection is the particular projection which is the mapping of the surface of a sphere onto the surface of the same infinite coaxial cylinder as the Mercator projection but defined by the mapping

$$
\theta a \tan \theta \rightarrow \theta
$$

### 2.6 METHODS OF COMPUTATION IR MERCATOR SAILIAG.

The navigational formula which are derived for calculating the components of the right angled triangles defined by the intersection of a loxodrome with the meridians and the parallels of latitude are collectively known as the formulae for MBRCATOR SAILIAG.

From the limiting forn of triangle PQR in Figure 2.7, we find

$$
\frac{a \cos d \theta}{a d y}=\tan \alpha
$$

Separating the variables gives

$$
a d \theta=(\tan \alpha) a \sec d \phi
$$

where it will be noticed that we have not cancelled a fron both sides of the equation.

If the observer has travelled along the path of the loxodrome from the point $P_{0}$ (longitude $\theta_{o}$ latitude $)_{0}$ ) to point $P_{1}$ (longitude $\theta_{1}$, latitude, 1 we integrate to find

$$
\begin{equation*}
a\left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{0}\right)=\left(\int_{0}^{1} a \sec d \theta\right) \tan \alpha \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation - (2.4) - is fundamental for a ship eailing along the arc of a loxodrome.

The expression
15 the DIFFERERCB OF LOYGITUDE between $P_{0}$ and $P_{1}$ and is conventionally measured in minutes. The abbreviation for the difference of longitude is $D^{\prime}$ LONG.

For a point $P$, where the latitude is, we also define the function M( ${ }^{(\$): ~}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
M(\beta)=a\}_{0}^{1} \sec u d u=a \ln [\tan (\beta / 2+w / a)] \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The function, $M(\mathbb{N})$, is known as the KBRIDIOIAL PARTS of the point $P$ being a function of the latitude, . This is the distance from the Equator to the image of the point $P$ in Mercator's Projection. Meridional Parts are expressed in units of the length of one minute of arc of the Equator. In Fautical Tables, Meridional Parts are tabulated for each one minute of arc of the meridian and, even until the middle of the twentieth century, this tabulation was for the sphere. On a Kercator chart at the parallel where the latitude is the ratio of the scale of longitude to the scale of latitude is locally 1 : gec . The integral
$a \oint_{0}^{1,} \sec d y$
is the DIFFRRENCB OF HERIDIOAAL PARTS and, in navigational notation, is abbreviated to $D^{\prime}$ MP. In navigational notation, therefore, equation (2.4) 1\& written
$D^{\prime}$ LONG $=D^{\prime}$ MP $\times$ TA\# (Couree)

To compute the distance, $B$, from $P_{0}$ to $P_{1}$ along the arc of the loxodrome we use triangle $P Q R$ to find

$$
d s=a \sec \alpha d
$$

then we have, on integration


As we saw, the quantity $a(1,10)$ is the difference of latitude measured in minutes and, in navigational notation is abbreviated to D'LAT so that equation (2.7) is written in the form

```
DISTAECE = D'LAT < SEC(Course)
```

Distance cannot, in general, be measured directly between two pointe on a Mercator chart but, locally, a good approxination can be obtained. This can be seen by noting that, using the mean value theorem, $D^{\prime}$ MP may be written as

```
a sec |m (| - - |)
```



When $a(\beta, 1-1$ the length of the inage of one ninute of latitude is seen to be sec 1 m . We find, however, that in the linit, as $\| \rightarrow$ to the image length of one geographical nile along the meridian is equal to sec po. At the same time the image length of one mile along the parallel of latitude $p=10$ ds also equal to sec 队。

### 2.6 EXAMPLES OP CALCULATIOIS USIFG JERCATOR SAILIMG.

The navigator uses the mathod of Hercator Sailing in two waye - to calculate the final position, $P$, after sailing a given distance along the arc of a loxodrome from a point $P_{0}$ or to find the course and distance rade good between two obeerved poeitions, Po and P1. The method ie reduced to the simple application of plane trigonometry to the right angled triangles formed by the Intersection of the loxodrone with the meridian through $P_{0}$ and parallel of latitude through $P_{1}$ shown in Figuree 2.9(1) and 2.9(i1). Figure 2.9 (11) is a triangle on the suriace of the ephere and Figure 2.9 (1) is a triangle on the surface of the coazial cylinder. An example of each of these calculations follows.


FIGURE 2.9(1)


FIGURE 2.9(11)

EXAMPLE 1. At noon on one day the observer's position was 31045'M $32^{\circ} 35^{\prime E}$ and on the next day at noon the position was $36030^{\prime}$ I 40\%20'E. Find the course and distance made good in the twenty four hour period and the average speed for the day.

From nautical tables we find the values of the meridional parts function $\mathrm{M}(\mathrm{s})$ :

| $M\left(360^{\circ} \mathrm{H}\right)$ | 2355.19 |
| :--- | ---: |
| $M\left(31^{\circ} 45^{\prime} \mathrm{H}\right)$ | 2010.72 |
| $D^{\prime} M P$ | 344.47 |

Final longitude $\quad 40^{\circ} 20^{\circ}$
Initial Longitude $32^{\circ} 35^{\circ}$
D'Long 7045' (= 465 ginutes of arc)

From equation (2.4) or (2.6) and Figure $2.7(1)$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Tan } \alpha=\frac{D^{\prime} \text { LOIG }}{D^{\prime} \mathrm{MP}}=\frac{405}{344.47}=1.3498998 \\
& \alpha=53^{\circ} 28.1^{\prime} \\
& \text { Final Latitude } \quad 36 \circ 30.00^{\circ} \\
& \text { Initial Latitude } \quad 31^{\circ} 45.00^{\circ} \\
& \text { D'LAT }^{4 \circ 45.00^{\circ}}(=285 \text { ainutes of arc })
\end{aligned}
$$

From equation (2.7)

$$
s=a\left(1,-\beta_{0}\right) \sec \alpha=478.79
$$

COURSE $=053^{\circ} 28.1^{\prime}$ DISTAECE $=478.79$ SPEED $=19.95$ knots.

EXAMPLE 2. An observer in position $30^{\circ} 00^{\prime}$ n $30^{\circ} 00^{\prime}$ B travels a distance of 500 nautical miles along a loxodrome on a course of 045*. Find the final position.

From equation (2.7) we find the D'LAT[=a(1, - (o)]

```
D'LAT = s cos a = 500. cos 450 = 353.55 adnutes of arc
```

On a courge of $045^{\circ}$ the observer increases latitude and so the Difference of Latitude is Jorthward

| Initial Latitude | $30^{\circ} 00^{\prime}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| D'Lat $^{\prime}$ | $5^{\circ} 53.55^{\prime}$ |
| Pinal Latitude | $35053.55^{\prime}$ |

Fron lautical Tables we find
$\mathrm{H}\left(35 \circ 53.55^{\prime}\right) \quad 2309.47$
$\mathrm{M}\left(30^{\circ} 00.00^{\prime}\right) \quad 1888.38$
80 that $D^{\prime}$ MP 421.09

Pron equation (2.4) or (2.6) we now find
$D^{\prime}$ LONO = $D^{\prime}$ MP $\tan 45^{\circ}$
hence $\quad D^{\prime}$ LONG $=421.09$ minutes of arc.

On a course of $045^{\circ}$ the observer increases the longitude to the East so that we add the difference of longitude

| Initial Longitude | $30000.00^{\prime}$ |
| :--- | ---: |
| D' Long $^{\circ}$ | $7001.09^{\prime}$ |
| Pinal Longitude | $37 \circ 01.09^{\prime}$ |



There 1s, of course, no need to perform these computations this way in this day and age since we have colputing devices which make redundant the need to keep tables. The integral in equation (2.3) is a standard integral and does integrate exactly to a form which can be computed easily. However, as another consequence of the availability of the computer we no longer use the spherical approximations and concentrate wore on the performing the same computations on the surface of the Spheroidal Barth.

It is interesting to note that the set of Iorie's lautical Tables'7 that were used to complete the above computation are a set published in 1948 and give tables of Keridional parts for both the sphere and the spheroid and that the table for Meridional Parts for the sphere Is given preference where one would have thought the more accurate version for the epherold would have had pride of place.

In the first set of Forie's Hautical Tables'e that the author acquired as an officer cadet in 1954 (and which were published in 1954) there is only one table of Meridional Parts - that for the Terrestial Spheroid.
Inman's Nautical Tables's of 1952 give a table of Meridional Parte for the sphere with a footnote explaining that the Meridional Parte for the spheroid can be obtained by entering the table with the "reduced" latitude.

### 2.6 MIDDLE LATITUDE SAILIMG.

On the surface of a sphere Middle Latitude Sailing 18 a method of computing course and distance along the arc of a loxodrome without involving Mercator's Projection. On a surface of a spheroid, however, Middle Latitude sailing cannot be used independently although the method is still documented.

Consider, once again, an observer travelling along a loxodrome on course $\alpha$ on the surface of a shere. Ve have, at a point $P$ on the loxodrome where the latitude 16 and the longitude $18 \quad \theta$, the differential triangle $P Q R$ (Figure 2.7) where a 18 the equatorial radius of the Earth and 8 is the arc length along the loxodrome. The angles are measured in radians and the distances in the unit of one minute of arc of the Equator.

In the triangle $P Q R$ the side $P Q$ is along the tangent to the loxodrome at $P$, the side $Q R$ is along the tangent to the meridian and the departure, $P R$ ( $=d \lambda$ say) which is along the tangent to the parallel of latitude, 18 given by

$$
d \lambda=a \cos d d \theta
$$

Thus when the observer travels along the lazodrome from a point Po
 $\theta_{n}$ ) then the departure made good, $\lambda_{\text {, }}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda=a\left\{_{\theta_{0}}^{\theta_{n}} \cos d \theta\right. \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Departure $1 s$ the length of the side opposite to the couree angle, $a$, in Pigure 2.9(11).

Now 18 a function of $\theta$ and, indeed, they are related by the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \left(n / 4-(/ 2)=\tan (n / 4-10 / 2) e^{-\left(\cos \operatorname{mon} e_{0}\right)}\right. \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation, (2.B) can be deduced from equations (2.1) and (2.2). It is difficult from this relationship to express explicitly in terms of $\theta$ and perform the integration in equation (2.7) wo we proceed without doing 60 . Since $\cos$ is positive and also decreasing in the interval $[0, n / 2]$, we can apply the Second Mean Value Theorem for Integrals through which we find that for some value $x$ of $d$ such that fo $x$ we have

or $\quad \lambda=a\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right) \cos x$

This is saying that

```
DEPARTURE = D'LONG x MEAN OF COS LAT
```

whereas, in common parlance, this formula is often quoted as

$$
\text { DEPARTURE }=\text { D'LOAG } \times \text { COS OF MRA LAT }
$$

and even applied that way.

Strictly speaking of course, cos $X$ is not the man of cos when Ho $X$ but, rather, some value of cos which satisfies equation (2.9). In the case of adhere, however, if we use the simple form of the mean value we find that

and that, over short distances, the error in so doing is not serious. Hence, from equation (2.9) we find

$$
\left.\lambda=\frac{a\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)}{\left(\phi_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)}\right\}_{0}^{\theta_{0}} \cos \phi
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda=\frac{a\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)}{\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)}\left(6 \ln \theta_{n}-\sin \theta_{0}\right) \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

and this is a falrly simple formula from which to compute departure on the surface of a sphere.

As an example let us compute the course and distance made good between the points $P_{0}\left(31045^{\prime}\right.$ I $\left.32 \circ 35^{\prime} \mathrm{E}\right)$ and $P_{n}\left(36030^{\prime} I 0^{\circ} 20^{\prime} \mathrm{E}\right)$ making uge of the above formula (4) and also by the method of Mercator Salling to compare the results.

From the Middle Latitude Sailing method we find
Course Made Good $=053^{\circ} 28.6^{\circ}$ Distance $=478.86$
and from Mercator Sailing we find
Course Made Good $=053^{\circ} 28.1^{\circ}$ D1stance $=478.79$
The value used for the radius of the Barth in both cases was $a=3437.7468$ geographical miles.
Over longer distances such as the passage acroses an ocean, equation (2.10) is not accurate enough and we must then use sone numerical method to evaluate the integral in equation (2.7) expresaing in terms of $\theta$ by equation (2.8).
$-3-$
NAVIGATING ALDNG
A LOXODFDMIC CURVE ON THE STIRFACE OF A SFHEROID

### 3.1 INTRODUCTIOR.

The shape of the Earth is better approximated by a regular spheroid rather than a sphere by which we mean, in this case, a spheroid which is a surface of revolution generated by revolving an ellipse about its minor axis. On such a surface the meridians are ellipses. The eccentricity of the meridians is small ( $x 0.08$ ) and there $1 s$ no general agreement as to which exact value is the "best" value to effect a global fit of this surface to the surface of the Earth. For a mathematical treatment of the methods of navigating along a loxodromic curve on the surface of a spherold it does not really matter which precise value we use. Ve will use the letter "e" to denote the eccentricity and, where numerical results are required, we will use the value $e=0.08227$ which 16 the value cattributed to Clarke) computed in 1866 from survey data gathered in Forth and Central America and Greenland. This particular value was chosen because this author became faniliar with it through using the "American Practical Navigator" ${ }^{2}$.

Despite the fact that the knowledge that the Earth is ellipsoidal in shape and not spherical has long been well known it has not even yet been fully embraced in the science of Havigation. In this chapter we will review the work done in recent years.
3.2 COMPUTIRG THE LEMGTH OF A MERIDIAE ON THE SURPACE OF A SPHEROID.


FIGURE 3.1
SECTION OF A SPHEROID II THE PLAAFB
of A MERIDIAN.

Let us suppose that the Barth is a regular spheroid and that the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is e. Figure 3.1 shows part of the section of the spheroid in the plane of a meridian. In Figure 3.1 the centre of the spheroid $1 s$ at 0 and $\mathbf{I s}$ the Iorth Pole. OE ( $=$ a) is the Equatorial radius. At the point $p$ the geocentric latitude 15 and the geodetic latitude $15 y . y$ and are connected by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(1-e^{2}\right) \tan y=\tan \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The radius, $a_{f i}(=O P$ in Figure 3.1 ) of the spheroid at point $P$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{p}=a \sqrt{\frac{1-e^{2}}{1-e^{2} \cos ^{2}}} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where a 18 the equatorial radius of the epheroid. This can be seen from elementary consideration of the geometry of the ellipee.

Let $\Delta \mu(=P R$ in Figure 3.2) be an small element of the meridian at P. In the triangle $P Q R$ of Figure $3.2 P Q$ ie the arc of a circle of radius $a_{F}$ centred at the centre of the spheroid and we have $P Q=a_{D} \Delta \|$. The angle $Q P R$ is $(\gamma-\beta)$ which is the angle between the normal at $P$ and the radius of the spheroid at $P$. In the linit as $\Delta \mu \rightarrow 0$ the triangle $P Q R 18$ a right angled triangle with the right angle at $Q$ and we find


The length of the meridian, therefore, fron the Bquator to the point $P$ (where the latitude is $f_{p}$ ) is given by $L\left(\phi_{p}\right)$ and the functional notation $L(g)$ is used to denote the Length of the madian from the
equator to the point on the meridian where the latitude is $\%$. We find then

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(\phi_{p}\right)=\oint_{0}^{\beta_{n}} a_{p} \sec (y-\phi) d p \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the latitude of the point $P$ on the terrestial spheroid is expressed formally as a geodetic latitude then the integral (3.3) must also be expressed in terns of the geodetic latitude.

If we use equation (3.1) to find $y$ in terns of and differentiate to find $d y$ in terms of $d ;$ then, after some manipulation, the integral (3.3) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(y_{F}\right)=\oint_{0}^{y_{D}} \frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\left(1-e^{2} \sin ^{2} \gamma\right)^{3}} d y \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that when the geodetic latitude of the point $P$ is $\gamma_{p}$ then the distance along the meridian fron the Equator to $P$ is given by $L\left(y_{p}\right)$ in equation (3.4).

As an analogy with Meridional Parts we have called this function value $L\left(y_{p}\right)$ the LATITUDR PARTS at the point $P$. In the past it has been the practice to compute the length of the meridian on the surface of the Terestial Spheroid by computing the number of ninutes of arc in the Difference of Geodetic latitude and declaring this to be the length of arc in Geographical Miles. Indeed, even now, none of the standard text books recomend anything different but simple numerical methods such as the Direct Cubic Spline (which we will describe in Part 2 of this thesis) can give the value of the integral (3.4) in geographical miles correct to two decimal places when the step length of the procedure is as much as $5^{\circ}$. A table of LATITUDE PARTS was computed by the author ${ }^{20}$, and is shown in Appendix 2. The computation is based on the Clarke (1866) spheroid where the eccentricity, $e$, of the meridional ellipse is taken as 0.08227 . The paper, detailing the method of computation of Latitude

Parts, was published by the Journal of Mavigation. At that time it was still the practice at sea to compute manually but now it is clear that with a modern small PC the values of the integral (3.4) can be computed directly as a subroutine in a computer programme while solving the general problen of navigating along a loxodromic curve. Other papers have been published along the same theme. In 1948 D.H.Sadler ${ }^{21}$ and then in 1950 J.E.D.Villiams ${ }^{22}$ both published works which recommended a more accurate solution to the problem of computing the course and distance along the arc of a loxodromic curve between two points on the surface of a spheroid. Both of these authors each recormended and produced a table of correctiona to be applied to the Difference of Latitude between two points on a meridian, when the Difference of Latitude is expressed in minutes of arc, in order to find the actual distance along the meridian between the two points in geographical miles. Implicit in their approach was the fact that the computations would be performed manually. After the publication of the Table of Latitude Parts by the author ${ }^{20}$, Hairawa ${ }^{23}$ acknowledged the introduction of the term "Latitude Parts" and published his own table for the Bessel spheroid for which the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse 150.081697 . This is the spheroid computed by Bessel based on survey data collected in China, Korea and Japan.

Since the total length of arc of the meridian fron the equator to the pole is ,in the Bessel spheroid, 5390.96 geographical miles while the distance fron the equator to the pole in the sphere with the same radius ( 3437.7468 geographical miles) is 5400 geographical miles, one might be tempted to assume that the error per degree of latitude is only about 0.1 geographical miles but the form of the meridian is, in fact, such that, from the Equator up to latitude approximately $55 \%$, the length of one minute of arc of the meridian is less than one geographical mile and, above latitude approximately $55^{\circ}$ to the Pole, the length of one minute of arc of the meridian 18 greater than one geographical nile. To the sea-going navigator this is important since nost commercial activity lies within latitudes $55^{\circ}$ I and $45^{\circ}$ S. The error in using the Difference of Latitude instead
of Latitude Parts is therefore nearly always in the same sense. On the surface of the Clarke spheroid, for instance, where the eccentricity $e=0.08227$ approximately, the distance from the Equator to a point $P$ where the geodetic latitude is 10 is equal to 59.56 geographical miles correct to two decimal places. The difference of latitude in minutes of arc would approximate this distance as 60 geographical miles - an error of 0.44 geographical miles and much greater than the average.

### 3.3 THE MERCATOR PROJBCTIOD OP THE SURFACB OF A SPHEROID.

The projection favoured by Navigators for drawing charts is the Mercator Projection. This projection was discussed in Chapter 2 with reference to the sphere. In a similar manner the surface of the spheroid $1 s$ projected onto a cylinder whose radius is equal to the equatorial radius of the spheroid and whose axis coincides with the axis of revolution of the spherold. For the spheroid the mapping is deflned by the equations

$$
\Leftrightarrow \notint_{0}^{\phi} a_{p} \sec (\gamma-\beta) \sec \| d \gamma \quad \theta+\theta
$$

The Rercator Projection of the surface of the spheroid onto the coaxial cylinder of the same radius as the spheroid is a conformal mapping in which the length of one minute of arc of longitude is constant and angles are preserved. The parallels of latitude on the surface of the spheroid are transformed into circles on the surface of the cylinder but they are all of radius equal to the Bquator and contained in parallel planes. The Heridians of the Spheroid transform into the meridians of the cylinder and, of course, they cut the inages of the parallels of latitude at right angles.

Let ds be the differential element along the arc of the loxodrome on the surface of the spheroid between the points $P$ and $Q$ which cuts the meridians at a constant angle $\alpha$. See Figure 3.3.


FIGURE 3.3

Corresponding to ds, the distance (PR) along the meridian through $P$ to the parallel of geocentric latitude ( $Q R$ ) is $a_{p s e c}^{(y-\beta)}$ ds (as determined in section 3.2) and the distance (QR) along the parallel where the geocentric latitude is is apcos $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{p}} \mathrm{d}$. This, by elementary considerations of trigonometry,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \alpha=\frac{a_{p} \cos d \theta}{a_{p} \sec (\gamma-\phi) d \gamma} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

We find that the differential ( $a d \theta$ ) of the Difference of Longitude (D' LONG) to be

$$
\begin{equation*}
a d \theta=(\tan \alpha) a \sec (y-\beta) \sec \beta d \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we now consider that an observer has travelled along the loxodrome fron the Equator where $\Rightarrow=0$ and $\theta=\theta$ a to a point $P$ where $\theta=g_{p}$ and $\theta=\theta_{p}$ then we find by integrating equation (3.6)

$$
\left.a\left(\theta_{p}-\theta_{0}\right)=(\tan \alpha)\right\}_{0}^{p} a \sec (\gamma-\beta) \sec . d \xi(3.7)
$$

If, therefore, we map the point $P$ whose geocentric latitude is fo onto the surface of the cylinder so that the distance, $M\left(\beta_{p}\right)$, along the meridian from the Equator to the image of $P$ is given by

$$
M\left(\gamma_{p}\right)=\left\{_{0}^{f_{p}} \sec (\gamma-\gamma) \sec \phi d \eta\right.
$$

hence
$a\left(\theta_{p}-\theta_{0}\right)=M\left(\|_{\infty}\right) \tan \alpha$.

We see then that, under the transformation

$$
1 \rightarrow K(p) \quad \theta \rightarrow \theta
$$

the angle $\alpha$ is preserved and that the mpping is conformal.

### 3.4 COMPUTATIOI OF MERIDIOIAL PARTS.

The length of one minute of arc of latitude on the surface of the cylinder varies as a function of latitude and, for a gen value of the geodetic latitude, $\gamma$, on the surface of the spheroid, the distance, along the meridian on the surface of the cylinder is given by $M(y)$, the KERIDIOMAL PARTS for the geodetic latitude $\gamma$ determined below. In nautical tables the meridional parts are expressed in units of the length of one minute of arc of the equator.

The image of the laxodrame under the Mercator Projection is a circular helix which cuts the meridians of the cylinder at the same constant angle as the loxodrome cuts the meridians on the surface of the spheroid.

Equation (3.8) is the Mavigator's formula
D'LOMG = D' MP x TAl (Course) for the spheroid.

In the mapping, therefore in which equation (3.8) holds, the angle, $\alpha$, 16 preserved, the meridians on the epheroid are maped into the meridians of the cylinder and the perpandicular distance between the meridians on the surface of the cylinder is constant.


FIGURE 3.4

If the cylinder is then "unfolded" onto a plane then the loxodrome 1s a straight line which cuts the meridians at the angle $\alpha$ and we have a right angled triangle. The right angle is at the point of intersection of the meridian $\theta=\theta_{0}$ with the parallel of geocentric latitude $\|_{0} \quad a\left(\theta_{\infty}-\theta_{\infty}\right)(w h i c h$ is the perpendicular distance between the meridians on the flat plane) is the side opposite the angle $\alpha$ and $M\left(\rho_{p}\right)$ is the side adjacent to the angle $\alpha$ (Tiangle $P Q R$ in Pigure 3.4).

If we differentiate equation (3.1), solve for ds and substitute into equation (3.7), then, along an arc of the loxodrome between two positions $P_{0}$ and $P_{n}$ where the geodetic latitudes are $Y_{0}$ and $Y_{n}$ and the longitudes are $\theta_{0}$ and $\theta_{n}$, respectively, and the course is $\alpha$, we find

$$
a\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)=(\tan \alpha) \int_{\theta_{0}}^{y_{n}} a\left(1-e^{2}\right) \sec (y-y) \cos \gamma \sec ^{2} y d y
$$

In the integral on the right hand side we express, in terma of $y$ by means of equation (3.1) and rearrange to find

$$
a\left\{_{y_{0}}^{y_{n}} \sec y d y-a \oint_{y_{0}}^{y_{n}} \frac{e^{2} \cos ^{2} y^{2} e^{2} i^{2} y}{1-\ldots . .(3.9)} d y \quad \ldots\left(e^{2}\right)\right.
$$

which integrates exactly to

$$
\left.\begin{aligned}
& y_{n} \\
& y_{0}
\end{aligned} \right\rvert\, a \ln [\tan (\pi / a+y / 2)]-\text { (Mae) } \ln \left[\left.\frac{1+\operatorname{ain} y}{1-\sin y} \right\rvert\,\right.
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \leqslant|y| \leqslant \pi / z \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The integral (3.9) and its solution given by (3.10) give the length of the meridian II MERCATOR'S PROJECTION OF THE SPHEROID between two points where the geodetic latitudes are Yo and Yo. This distance 18 Known as the DIFFEREFCE OP MERIDIOBAL PARTS and is masured in the units of the length of one minute of arc of the Equator. The integral over the interval $[0, y]$ for $0 \leqslant y \leqslant W^{2} \pi$ is tabulated into a Table of Meridional Parts for the Terrestial Spheroid and is now
published in books of Nautical tables to aid manual computations. The evaluation of the expression (3.10) to give the Difference of Meridional Parts ( $D^{\prime}$ MP) presents no problems to the modern computer.
3.5 projection of the surface of the spheroid onto the polar plant. In Chapter 2 we have shown how the surface of the sphere is projected fron the South Pole onto the plane tangent to the Morth Pole under the stereographic projection. In a sinilar manner we can showm how the surface of the spheroid can also be mapped onto the plane tangent to the North Pole so that the mapping is conformal.

We do not project the surface from a single point but the point of projection moves along the axis of the spheroid. See Figure 3.51.


FIGURE 3.511

The geonetrical basis of the projection is that the triangle PTP' must always be isoceles. When this 15 so then the faces PTT and $P^{\prime} T T^{\prime}$ of the wedge PTT' ${ }^{\prime}$ (Figure 3.511 ) are congruent triangles in which the angle TPT' (the angle at which the loxodrone cuts the meridian) and the angle TP'T' (the angle at which the image of the loxodrome cuts the radial line in the polar plane) are equal and therefore preserved by the projection. The line TT' is the intersection of the plane through $P$ which is tangent to the spherold and the polar plane (the plane which is tangent to the pole).

If $p$ is the geodetic latitude then the angle at $T$ in the triangle PTP' is equal to $4 \pi-y$ and, hence, when triangle PTP' is isoceles, it can be deduced that the angle at $S^{\prime}$ (the point where the line P'P produced cuts the axis of the spheroid) 18 equal to $1 / a \pi$ - Wy. The length, therefore, of the radius vector $r$ ( $=$ NP') in the polar plane is given by

$$
r=M P^{\prime}=K(\psi) \tan (1 / \Delta \pi-\psi \psi)
$$

where

$$
\mathbf{k}(\psi)=b-a_{p} \sin \eta+a_{p} \cos \psi \cot (1 / \Delta \pi-k y)
$$

The stereographic projection is useful in mapping the Polar Regions.

### 3.6 COMPUTATION OF COURSE AIDD DISTAICE ALOEG A LOXODROMIC CURVE O. THE SURPACE OF A SPBEROID.

If we refer again to Figure 3.3 and to the liniting quantities that result from the triangle $P Q R$ we see that

$$
d s=(\sec \alpha) a_{p} \sec ((y-\phi) d y
$$

so that the distance, 8 , between two observed position where the geocentric latitudes are fo and fo is given by

$$
s=(\sec \alpha) \oint_{y_{0}}^{n_{a_{n}}} \sec (y-\phi) d y
$$

If the latitudes are expressed in geodetic forn (which 18 usual) then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon=(\sec \alpha) \oint_{y_{0}}^{y_{n}} \frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(1-e^{2} s i n^{2} y\right)}} d y \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The integral on the right hand side 18 the Difference of Latitude Parts and is abbreviated to D'LP. Equation 3.11 1s written

DISTABCB $=D^{\prime}$ LP $\times \operatorname{SEC}($ Course $)$

We will now rework the examples used in chapter 2 using the same positions but noting that, on the surface of the spheroid, the latitudes are now geodetic latitudes.

The "Sailing" Triangles are naw Ehown in Figures 3.6(1) and 3.6(1i).


FIGURE 3.6(1)


FIGURE 3.6(11)

Example 1. At noon on one day the observer's position was 31045'I $32^{\circ} 35^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{E}$ and on the next day at noon the position was $36{ }^{\circ} 30^{\prime \prime}$ $40^{\circ} 20^{\prime} \mathrm{E}$. Find the course made good in the twenty four hour period and the average speed for the day.

| From Rautical Tables: | M(36030') | 2341.27 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | M(31045') | 1998.40 |
|  | D' MP | 342.97 |

```
            Final Longitude 40%20'
            Initial longitude 32035'
                    D' LOMG
\[
\operatorname{Tan} \alpha=\frac{D^{\prime} \text { LONG }}{D^{\prime} M P}=\frac{465}{342.97}=1.3558037
\]
\[
\alpha=53^{\circ} 35.3^{\prime}
\]
Frow Table of Latitude Parts (Appendix 2)
\begin{tabular}{lr}
\(L\left(360^{\circ} 30^{\prime}\right)\) & 2177.94 \\
\(L\left(31^{\circ} 45^{\prime}\right)\) & 1893.96 \\
D \(^{\prime} L P\) & 283.98
\end{tabular}
\[
s=D^{\prime} L P \text { sec } \alpha=478.42
\]
\[
\text { COURSE }=053^{\circ} 35.3^{\circ} \quad \text { DISTAFCE }=478.42 \quad \text { SPEED }=19.93 \text { mots }
\]
The results are not very different fron those obtalned for the spherical Earth model ( \(053^{\circ} 28.1^{\prime}\), 478.79, 19.95) but, if we had used Difference of Latitude instead of Difference of Latitude Parts we would have found
\[
s=D^{\prime} \text { LAT } \sec \alpha=a\left(y_{n}-\eta_{0}\right) \sec \alpha=480.14
\]
This Justifies the opening remark of Chapter 1 - that if the spherical model is used consistently then the model is an acceptable approximation but, in fact, the nodel has not been used consistentiy and it bas been the practice to use D'LAT (for a sphere) in the eame formula as the course angle, \(\alpha\), deternined from spheroid data.
```

We now rework the second example again where, given the initial position and the course and distance steamed, we need to find the final position. This not such a straightforward problem on the surface of a spheroid. We will perform the computation using a PC with the following proceedure. Ve can compute the $D^{\prime} L P$ fron the formula

$$
D^{\prime} L P=s \cos \alpha
$$

and let us suppose that we have found $D^{\prime}$ LP $=\Delta$ (say). Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\oint_{y_{0}}^{y_{n}} \frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(1-e^{2} 61 n^{2} y\right)^{3}}} d y=\Delta \tag{3,12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Ve know $Y_{0}$ but we need to determine $Y_{n}$ fron (3.12). This can be done by defining $F\left(y_{n}\right)$ by
and solving the non-linear equation $\quad P\left(y_{n}\right)=0 \quad$ using Hewton's mathod.

Ve have

$$
F^{\prime}\left(y_{n}\right)=f\left(y_{n}\right)=\frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(1-e^{2} s 1 n^{2} y_{n}\right)}}
$$

and we can determine $\psi_{n}$ fron the iterative schema

$$
\psi_{r+1}=\nu_{r}-\frac{F\left(\psi_{r}\right)}{f\left(\psi_{r}\right)}
$$

The initial approximation $\psi_{1}$ for $y_{n}$ can be obtained by assuming that $\Delta$ is equal to the Difference of Latitude in inutes of arc and then

$$
y_{1}=y_{0}+\frac{\Delta}{a}
$$

Given, then, that we have deternined the final latitude, $y_{n,}$ we can deternine the Meridional Parts, $M\left(y_{n}\right)$, and the Difference of Meridional Parts $\quad D^{\prime} M P=M\left(y_{n}\right)-M\left(p_{0}\right) . \quad V e$ then find the Difference of Longitude, $D^{\prime}$ LORG, $\left[=a\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{0}\right)\right]$ fron

$$
a\left(\theta_{r}-\theta_{\infty}\right)=D^{\prime} M P \cot \alpha
$$

and the final longitude, $\theta_{n}$, is

$$
\theta_{n}=\frac{1}{a}\left(D^{\prime} \operatorname{MP} \cot \alpha\right)-\theta_{0}
$$

The detalls of the computed solution for Example 2 with the computer program now follow overleaf.

### 3.7 THE COMPUTER PROGRAM TO SOLVE EXAMPLE 2.

EXAMPLE 2. An observer in position 30\%00'1 30000'B travele a distance of 500 nautical miles along a loxodrome on a course of 045. Find the final position.


```
Initial Lat 30 0 Initial long 30 0
Distance 500 Course 45
```

FINAL LATITUDE $=3554.9$
FINAL LONGITUDE $=371.28$

In chapter 2 using the spherical approximation to the shape of the Earth we found

FINAL POSITION : $35^{\circ} 53.55^{\circ} \% 37^{\circ} 01.09^{\circ} \mathrm{W}$.

The difference in the latitudes is quite significant.
3.8 THE NETHOD OF CARLTON VIPPERN USING ELLIPTICAL INTEGRALS.

The function $L(y)$ gives us the length of arc of the meridian on the surface of a spheroid from the equator to the parallel where the geodetic latitude is $\gamma$. This the length of the arc of an ellipse and can also be evaluated using an elliptical integral. The use of the elliptical integral to compute the length of arc of the meridian was featured in the paper by Carlton-Wippern ${ }^{24}$ published in the Journal of Navigation in May 1992. It does mean that the latitude must be transformed to suit the form in which the elliptical integral is expressed .

Let a meridian on the surface of a spheroid whose equatorial radius is a and polar radius $b$ be expressed in cartesian coordinates in the usual manner so that the origin is at the centre of the spheroid. Its equation is

$$
\frac{x^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{y^{2}}{b^{2}}=1
$$

and the length of arc from the point $P$ on the ellipse where the $x$ coordinate is $x_{p}$ to the extremity of the major axis is given by the integral

$$
\oint_{x_{p}}^{a} \sqrt{1+\left(\frac{d y}{d x}\right)^{2}} d x
$$

If we use the substitution $\sin x=\frac{x}{a}$ then this integral becomes

$$
a\left\{_{x_{p}}^{1 / 2} \sqrt{ }\left(1-e^{2} \sin ^{2} x\right) d x\right.
$$

which is an elliptical integral.

The angle $x$ is the angle subtended at the point $P^{\prime}$ on the auxilliary circle by the abcissa of the point $P$ on the ellipse. $X$ is connected to the geocentric latitude,, , and then the geodetic latitude, $y, b y$ the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \tan \phi=\left(1-e^{2}\right) \tan \psi \\
& \sin x=\cos \psi \sqrt{\frac{1-e^{2}}{1-e^{2} \cos ^{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

See Figure 3. 3.


FIGURE 3.3

Carlton-Wippern did not give any numerical results to his method probably because the basic formulae that he uses are well founded. His method follows the pattern of the method used in section 3.6 and in the computer program of section 3.7 here.

NAVIGATING ALONG THE GEODESIG PATH BETWEEN TWO POINTS
ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHERE

### 4.1. GEODESIC ARCS.

While it is often convenient, in order to avoid the flow of current or adverse prevalling weather conditions, to navigate across the oceans between two points along a line of constant course it would seem more logical to seek the shortest path. Over long distances often the result is a compronise, part of the fourney along a loxodromic curve and part along the shortest path. We have digcussed the problem of navigating along the arc of a loxodronic curve in Chapters 2 and 3 - now we will consider the problem of navigating along the shortest path.

On any surface of suitable continuity class the shortest path between two points on the surface is along the arc of a GEODESIC CURVE. The definition of a geodesic curve on a surface is a curve along whose length, at every point, the normal to the curve is also the normal to the surface at that point. There may be arcs of more than one geodesic curve through the two points and the corresponding arcs of these geodesic curves nay be of different length. There may also be nore than one geodesic arc between the two points which are of the same length.

We are particularly concerned with the problems of determining the shortest path between two points on the surface of a SPHERE and on the surface of an OBLATE SPHEROID both of which are used as approximations to the shape of the Earth. The sphere and the oblate spheroid are surfaces of revolution. An oblate spheroid is generated by revolving an ellipse about its minor axis and a shere is the special case in which that ellipse is a circle. In this chapter we consider the shortest path on the surface of a SPHERE.
4.2 GEODESIC ARCS OH THE SURFACE OF A SPHERE.

On the surface of a sphere all geodesic curves are great circles. A great circle on the surface of a sphere 18 a circle whose plane passes through the centre of the sphere and, except for points which are antipodean, the great circle arc whlch passes through two points
is unique. The plane of this great circle is generally defined by the two points together with the point at the centre of the sphere so that, when the two points are antipodean, the three points are then colinear and there are an infinite number of planes which pass through these points. Consider, for instance, the family of circles whose common diameter lies along the axis of revolution of the sphere.

Figure 4.1 shows a plane intersecting a sphere through its centre 0 . The closed curve WQER is a great circle.


### 4.3 SURFACES OF REVOLUTION - CLAIRAUT'S EQUATION.

On a surface of revolution which satisfies the required continuity conditions a special set of plane geodesic curves are defined by the intersection of the surface with a plane through the axis of revolution. These geodesic curves are known as meridians. Figure 4.2 shows meridians on the surface of a sphere. In the case of aphere all the meridians begin and end on the axis of revolution at the extremities of diameter. In the figure these extrenities are $N$ and S, known as the Poles, and, on the surface of the Earth these are designated as the Forth Pole and the South Pole.


FIGURE 4.2
MERIDIANS ON THE SURFACE OF A SPAERE

If any other geodesic on the surface of revolution cuts the meridians $m_{s}, m_{1}, \ldots, m_{r} \quad i n$ points $P_{0}, P_{1}, \ldots, P_{n}$ at angles $\gamma_{0}$. $\gamma_{1}, \ldots ., \gamma_{m}$, respectively, then we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{1} \sin \gamma_{1}=\text { constant } \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r_{i}$ is the perpendicular distance from $P_{i}$ to the axis of revolution. See Figure 4.3
Equation (4.1) is known as CLAIRAUT'S EQUATION. (Lyusternikas.)


FIGURE 4.3

The proof of Clairaut's Equation which follows is taken from the book by Belliz. It applies to any surface of revolution which satisfies the required continuity properties and it follows from the basic definition of a geodesic curve on a surface as stated in section 4.1 i.e. a geodesic curve is a curve on a surface along which, at every point, the normal to the curve is also the normal to the surface at that point.

In the $x y z$ coordinate frame let the surface be represented by the equation

$$
F(x, y, z)=0
$$

and let the curve on this surface be defined in terms of the arc length parameter $s$ so that, at a point $P$ on the curve the vector OP ( $=$ r) is given by

$$
\vec{r}=x(5) \hat{i}+y(5) \hat{j}+z(5) \hat{k}
$$

The normal to the surface is along the direction of the vector

$$
\left(F_{x}, F_{y}, F_{x}\right)
$$

where $F_{m ;}, F_{V}$, and $F_{x}$ are the first partial derivatives of the function $F(x, y, z)$ with respect to $x, y, z$, respectively. The normal to the curve is along the direction of the vector

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2}}{\mathrm{~d}} \frac{\vec{r}}{\mathrm{~s}^{2}}=\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x}{d s^{2}} \hat{i}+\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} y}{d s^{2}} \hat{j}+\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2}}{\mathrm{~d}} \frac{z}{s^{2}} \hat{k}
$$

From this we see that, if the curve is a geodesic curve,

$$
\frac{d^{2} x}{d s^{2}}=\lambda F_{r} \quad \frac{d^{2} y}{d s^{2}}=\lambda F_{Y} \quad \frac{d^{2} z}{d s^{2}}=\lambda F_{z} \quad \ldots(4.2)
$$

for some constant $\lambda$.
Now, on a surface of revolution, the $z$ coordinate can be expressed in terms of $x$ and $y$ and the implicit function $F(x, y, z)$ may thus be written in the form

$$
F(x, y, z)=f\left\{J\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)\right\}-z
$$

so that, substituting $u=\checkmark\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)$ we find

$$
F_{x}=\frac{X}{u} f^{\prime}(u) \quad F_{x}=\frac{Y}{u} f^{\prime}(u)
$$

hence from equation (4.2)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x \frac{d^{2} y}{d s^{z}}-y \frac{d^{2} x}{d s^{2}}=0 \\
& \frac{d}{d s}\left(x \frac{d y}{d s}-y \frac{d x}{d s}\right)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

or
so that $x \frac{d y}{d s}-y \frac{d x}{d s}=$ constant

In polar coordinates $x=u \cos \theta$ and $y=u \sin \theta$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{d x}{d s}=\frac{d u}{d s} \cos \theta-u \frac{d \theta}{d s} \sin \theta \\
& \frac{d y}{d s}=\frac{d u}{d s} \sin \theta+u \frac{d \theta}{d s} \cos \theta
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting these in equation (4.3) and rearranging gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{2} \frac{d \theta}{d s}=\text { constant } \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and this is the general result for a surface of revolution as given by Bell ${ }^{2 \epsilon}$.

In the particular case of the sphere consider the differential element ds of the geodesic arc between points $P$ and $R$ (Figure 4.4). At $P$ let the latitude be and the longitude $\theta$. Corresponding to ds we have $u$ sec $d /(=P Q)$ along the arc of the meridian through $P$ and $u d \theta(=Q R)$ along the parallel of latitude through $Q$ and $R$.


FIGURE 4.4

The angle $\hat{P Q R}(=\gamma)$ is given by

$$
\sin \gamma=\frac{\mu d \theta}{d s}
$$

so that equation (4.4) becomes

$$
u \sin y=\text { constant }
$$

which is Clairaut's Equation as given by equation (4.1).
7.5 Navigating along the arc of a great circle on the surface of the SPHERICAL EARTH.

Let us consider a point $P$ on the arc of a great circle which cuts the meridian though $P$ at an angle $x$. Let $d s$ be the differential element of the great circle at P. See Figure 4.5. In the triangle $P Q R$ corresponding to $d s(=P Q)$ we have $P Q=a d y$ and $Q R=a \cos d \theta$ where a is the radius of the sphere.


$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { Fron triangle } P Q R \text { we see that } \\
\sin \gamma=\frac{a \cos d \theta}{d s}
\end{gathered}
$$

FIGURE 4.5
and, sustituting this into Equation (4.1), we find the differential equation

$$
a^{2} \cos ^{2}\left(\frac{d \theta}{d s}\right)=\text { constant }
$$

since the length of the perpendicular from $P$ to the axis of revolution is a cos .

At the vertex, $V$, of the great circle, (the point on the great circle at which the latitude is a maximum - see figure 4.6), let the latitude be g. . At this point the great circle cuts the meridian at right angles and for this curve we then have $\gamma=\pi / 2$ and sin $y=1$ so that the constant in equation (4.1) is equal to a $\cos \mathrm{N}$.


FIGURE 4.6

The great circle that passes through the point $P$ and reaches its vertex, $V$, in latitude $v$ is therefore defined by the differential equation

and equation (4.1) can also be written in the form
$\cos \sin \gamma=\cos \gamma$

We can solve equation (4.5) using the substitution $y=a \tan$ (See Figure 4.7) and by expressing ds in terms of $d y$ and $d \theta$.


FIGURE 4.7 $E P^{\prime}=y=a \tan$

Ve find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \cos ^{2} y=\frac{a^{2}}{\left(y^{2}+a^{2}\right)} \\
& d y=\frac{a d y}{\left(y^{2}+a^{2}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

and, from Figure 4.5, we see that

$$
d s^{2}=a^{2} d \beta^{2}+a^{2} \cos ^{2} d d \theta^{2}
$$

Using these substitutions Equation (4.5) becomes

$$
d \theta=\frac{d y}{\sqrt{\left(y_{z}^{2}-y^{2}\right)}}
$$

and its solution is

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=y_{V} \sin \left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right) \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $y_{V}=a \tan d v$ and $\theta_{E} 1 s$ the longitude in which the great circle crosses the equator. Equation (4.7) represents the cylindrical projection (not the Mercator Projection) of the great circle onto an infinite cylinder which is coaxial with the sphere.

If the great circle passes through the points $P_{A}$, where $y=y_{A}$ and $\theta=\theta_{A}$, and $P_{B}$, where $y=y_{B}$ and $\theta=\theta_{B}$, then we can find $y \sim$ and $\theta_{r}$ fron equation (4.7)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \theta_{E}=\frac{y_{A} \sin \theta_{B}-y_{B} \sin \theta_{A}}{y_{A} \cos \theta_{B}-y_{B} \cos \theta_{A}} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
y_{V}=y_{A} \operatorname{cosec}\left(\theta_{A}-\theta_{E}\right)
$$

$$
(4.9) a
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{V}=y_{B} \operatorname{cosec}\left(\theta_{B}-\theta_{E}\right) \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Replacing $y=\tan$ in (4.7) we find the general equation which gives the latitude,, in terms of the longitude, $\theta$, along the arc of a great circle :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \beta=\tan \Rightarrow \sin \left(\theta-\theta_{\infty}\right) \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

To determine the distance, $s$, along the arc of the great circle between $P_{A}$ and $P_{B}$ we separate the variables in equation (4.5) and integrate to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
s=a\left\{_{\theta_{A}}^{\theta_{\theta}} \frac{\cos ^{2} \theta}{\cos } d \theta\right. \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Although this integral does have an analytical solution it can be Just as easy to compute numerically since, for navigational purposes, it is desirable to compute a number of intermediate points along the path of the Great Circle. The step-by-step method of the Direct Cubic Spline (which is described in Part 2 of this thesis) suits this purpose well and we also find that, when $\|=A$ and $\beta=0$, the derivatives of the integrand in equation (4.11) are both equal to zero and this provides us with the boundary conditions which are a desirable (but not essential) part of the Direct Cubic Spline computational scheme.

Subdividing the interval $\left[\theta_{A}, \theta_{E}\right]$ at points where the longitudes are

$$
\theta_{1}, \theta_{2}, \ldots, \theta_{n-1}
$$

and such that $\quad \theta_{A}=\theta_{0}<\theta_{1}<\ldots<\theta_{n-1}<\theta_{n}=\theta_{B}$
we can determine the corresponding latitudes 1,1 , ......... of intermediate points between $P_{A}$ and $P_{s}$ using whichever of the equations (4.9)a or (4.9)b is relevant.

If the vertex of the great circle lies on the arc between $P_{A}$ and $P_{b}$ then we can express the integral in equation (4.11) as the sum of two parts :
or $\left\{_{\theta_{A}}^{\theta_{\theta}} f(\theta) d \theta=\left\{_{\theta_{V}}^{\theta_{\theta}} f(\theta) d \theta-\left\{_{\theta_{V}}^{\theta_{A}} f(\theta) d \theta\right.\right.\right.$
and the boundary condition $f^{\prime}\left(\theta_{\checkmark}\right)=0$ can be applied.

Similarly, if the great circle arc between $P_{A}$ and $P_{B}$ crosses the Equator then

$$
\left\{_{\theta_{A}}^{\theta_{\theta}} f(\theta) d \theta=\right\}_{\theta_{E E}}^{\theta_{\theta}} f(\theta) d \theta-\int_{\theta_{E}}^{\theta_{A}} f(\theta) d \theta
$$

and the boundary condition $f^{\prime}\left(\theta_{\mathrm{E}}\right)=0$ can be used.

From equation (4.6) we can determine the angle between the great circle and the meridian at any point along the path and, hence, for the navigator, the course to steer.

The spherical model is the one most often used by seagoing navigators as the model for the shape of the Earth particularly in the manual method of computation of shortest distance. This computation is usually called "Great Circle Sailing" and its solution is usually effected using the methods of Spherical

Trigonometry - the Spherical Cosine Formula and Napier's Rules. The methods described here, however, can be just as simple to apply and do give us a lead into to solving the more complicated problem of determining the shortest path on the surface of a spheroid.

### 4.5 COMPUTATION OF POSITIOES ALONG THE GREAT CIRCLE PATH AND THE COURSB AND DISTANCE BETVEEN THEM.

As an example of the application of the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation to the computation of intermediate points along the path of a great circle arc on the surface of a sphere and the courses and distances between them, let us consider the arc of the great circle which starts at the Equator in longitude $0^{\circ}$ and reaches its vertex in latitude $45^{\circ}$ at longitude $90^{\circ}$.
At a point $P$ on this particular great circle arc the latitude, $\forall$, and the longitude, $\theta$, are related by

$$
\tan \phi=\sin \theta .
$$

This is a consequence of equation (4.10).
Let us choose a set of intermediate points $\left\{P_{1}\right\}$ along the path of the great circle where the longitudes $\left\{\theta_{i}\right\}$ of these points are evenly spaced at $5^{\circ}$ intervals. The latitudes $\left(\Omega_{2}\right)$ are given by

$$
\phi_{1}=\tan ^{-1}\left(\sin \theta_{1}\right)
$$

At the point $P_{1}$ the integrand, $f_{i}$ (the value of $f(\theta)$ when $\theta=\theta_{i}$ ), in equation 4.11 is, in this case, given by

$$
f_{1}=a \sqrt{2} \cos ^{2}
$$

and the course angle, $\gamma_{1}, i s$, from equation (4.6), given by

$$
\gamma_{1}=\sin ^{-1}\left(k / 2 \sec d_{x}\right) .
$$

If $S_{i}$ is the approxination to the distance $P_{o} P_{i}$ along the arc of the great circle and the $\left\{M_{1}\right\}$ are the moments of the cubic spline, then the computational scheme (Part 2 - chapter 1 : section 1.4 ) for the latitudes of the points along the path, the course angles and the distances is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{0}=0: f_{0}=a \vee 2: M_{c}=0: h=\frac{\pi}{3} \quad: \theta_{0}=0: \rho_{0}=0 \\
& \text { For } 1=1 \text { to 18: } \\
& \theta_{1}=1 \mathrm{~h} \\
& \|_{1}=\tan ^{-1}\left(\sin \theta_{1}\right) \\
& \gamma_{1}=\sin ^{-1}\left(1 / 2 \sqrt{2} \sec \|_{1}\right) \\
& f_{1}=a \quad \sqrt{2} \cos ^{2} \beta_{1} \\
& M_{1}=\frac{2\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)}{h}-M_{1-1} \\
& S_{1}=S_{1 \ldots}+\frac{h}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1 \ldots 1}\right)-\frac{h^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The results from the computation are shown in Table 4.1 below.

| 1 | $\theta_{1}$ | 1. | COURSE | DISTANCE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 5 | 4-58.9' | 045.220 | 423.20 |
| 2 | 10 | 9\%51.1' | 045.86 ${ }^{\circ}$ | 840.12 |
| 3 | 15 | 14³0.6' | 046.920 | 1245.22 |
| 4 | 20 | 18052.9' | 048.36 | 1634.19 |
| 5 | 25 | 22054.6' | $050.14{ }^{\circ}$ | 2004.20 |
| 6 | 30 | 26-33.9' | $052.24{ }^{\circ}$ | 2353.90 |
| 7 | 35 | 29-50.3' | 054.60 ${ }^{\circ}$ | 2683.15 |
| 8 | 40 | 32043.9' | 057.200 | 2992.76 |
| 9 | 45 | 35-15.9' | 060.000 | 3284.14 |
| 10 | 50 | 37-27. 22 | 062.970 | 3559.08 |
| 11 | 55 | 39019.4' | 066.070 | 3819.54 |
| 12 | 60 | 40-53.6' | $069.30^{\circ}$ | 4067.54 |
| 13 | 65 | 42-11.2' | 072.61* | 4305.07 |
| 14 | 70 | 43-13.2' | $076.00^{\circ}$ | 4534.03 |
| 15 | 75 | 44*00.4' | 079.45* | 4756.28 |
| 16 | 80 | 44-33.7' | 082.95 ${ }^{\circ}$ | 4973.56 |
| 17 | 85 | 44053.4 | 086.47 | 5187.60 |
| 18 | 90 | 45000.0' | 090.00 | 5400.00 |

TABLE 4.1

It is interesting to note that when $1=18$ the actual results for the latitude and the course were correct to 7 decimal places and the distance was correct to 4 decimal places. For the purpose of the table the results have been rounded to two decimal places.

The work in this section appeared as a paper published in the Journal of Navigation ${ }^{27}$.
4.6 SOLUTION OF GREAT CIRCLE SAILING PROBLEM USING SPherical TRIGONOMETRY.

A spherical triangle is the area enclosed by the intersection of three great circles. Figure 4.8 shows a spherical triangle PAB on the surface of a sphere. In the triangle the angles are denoted by $P$, $X$ and $Y$ and the sides $a s p, x$ and $y$. The sides are expressed as angles where $p, x$ and $y$ are the angles subtended at the centre of the sphere by the arcs $X Y, P Y$ and $P X$ respectively.


To solve the triangle for navigational purposes we use the SPHERICAL COSINB FORMULA.

Given a spherical triangle $P X Y$ with angles at $P, X$ and $Y$ and sides $p, x, y$ where side $p$ is opposite angle $P$, etc., we would use the Cosine Formula in the form

$$
\cos P=\frac{\cos p-\cos x \cos y}{\sin x \sin y}
$$

Or, to find a side ( $p$, say) we would use the Cosine Formula in the form

$$
\cos p=\cos x \cos y+\sin x \sin y \cos p
$$

In Havigation the point $P$ would normally be used to denote the position of the Pole. The initial position on the great circle would be $X$ and the final position at $Y$. We will know the angle at $P$ which 18 the difference of longitude between $X$ and $Y$ and we will know the angles subtended by the arcs PX (=y) and PY (=x)

$$
y=1 / 2 \pi-x \quad x=1 / 2 \pi-1 y
$$

where $\|_{x}$ are the latitudes of the points $X$ and $Y$ respectively.

Using the cosine formula to find the angle $X$, which will be the initial course along the path of the great circle, we would find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\cos x=\frac{\cos x-\cos p \cos y}{\sin p \sin y} \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

and to determine the angle subtended by the arc which is the side $p$ of the triangle, we would use

$$
\cos p=\cos x \cos y+\sin x \sin y \cos p \quad \ldots \text { (4.13) }
$$

If the point $P$, then, is a pole of the Spherical Earth, and the path of the great circle is from $X$ to $Y$ we would first determine the angle at $X$ which is the initial course of the great circle using the Equation (4.12). We would then determine the angle, $p$, subtended by the arc $X Y$ so that the distance, $s$, in geographical miles along the arc of the great circle between $X$ and $Y$ using Equation (4.13) is

$$
s=a p
$$

where $a$ is the radius of the spherical Earth and $p$ is expressed in radians.
Using the information we have now found we would then compute the position of the vertex, $V$, (the point at which the latitude along
the arc of the great circle is a maximum) which may or may not lie between $X$ and $Y$. See Figure 4.9.


FIGURE 4.8

The angle at $V$ in spherical triangles $P V X$ and $P Y V$ are right angles and this simplifies the application of the Cosine Formula. In triangle PVX we know the angle subtended by the arc PI and we have found the angle at $X$ above. Ve therefore find the angle, $v$, subtended by the arc PV from

$$
\sin V=\sin y \sin x
$$

and the angle at $P$ ( $P$ vx) in the triangle $P V X$ from

```
cot P}\mp@subsup{P}{vx}{}=\operatorname{cos}y\operatorname{tan}
```

Ve then find the latitude, $\mathcal{V}_{\mathrm{v}}$ and longitude, $\theta_{v}$, of the vertex

$$
\theta_{v}=4 \pi-v \quad \theta_{v}=\theta_{x}+P_{v x}
$$

Given then that we wish to find the latitudes $\left\{\phi_{1}\right\}$ of intermediate points lying in longitudes $\left\{\theta_{1}\right.$ ) we have

```
tan}\mp@subsup{|}{1}{\prime=}\operatorname{tan}\mp@subsup{|}{v}{}\operatorname{cos}(\mp@subsup{0}{V}{}-\mp@subsup{0}{1}{})
```

We would compute any information required in triangle $P Y V$ in a similar manner.

The methods employing spherical trigonometry are well tried and tested. It is not therefore necessary to show the results that would be obtained by the methods of spherical trigonometry as a comparison with the Direct Cubic Spline method although this is done indirectly in Chapter 5. It is hard to imagine, in any case, that any results better than those shown in table 4.1 could be achieved by any method.

There is not much to choose in the anount of computation required in either of the above methods of computing the distance along the great circle path but the first method, utilising the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation, we do find a step by step method of computing the intermediate positions and the course and distance between them along the great circle arc during the process of computing the overall distance. This saves a lot of time. The same method also serves to solve the similar problem of computing the shortest distance along a geodesic arc on the surface of a spheroid which is a better approximation to the shape of the Earth and where the methods of spherical trigonometry do not apply.

### 4.6 THE GNOMIC PROJECTIOR OF THE GREAT CIRCLE.

If, from the centre of the sphere, we project the arc of a great circle onto a tangent plane then the resulting image is always a straight line. This projection, known as the Gnomic projection, has many uses in navigation and many large scale navigational charts of ports and harbours are constructed using this projection. There are, however, gnomic projections of the Ocean Basins from which a navigator can lay off his great circle track as a straight line and then pick off points to transfer to the Mercator Chart. This is sometimes done instead of the computations above but there is a consequent loss of accuracy.

In the case where the tangent plane is the polar plane then, with the origin at the pole, using polar coordinates ( $r, \theta$ ) where $r=a \cot$ and $\theta$ is the longitude, the equation of the gnomic projection of a great circle is

$$
r=r_{V} \sec \left(\theta-\theta_{\checkmark}\right) \quad \ldots . . .(4.14)
$$

where $r_{v}=a \cot$. See Figure 4.9 .

(1)

(11)

FIGURE 4.9

Figure 4.9 ( 1 ) shows a section through the axis of the sphere and the point $P$. The point $P^{\prime}$ is the projection of $P$ in the polar plane. The straight 11 ne $V^{\prime} P^{\prime}$ in the tangent plane (Figure 4.9 (i1)) is the projection onto the polar plane of the arc VP of the great circle.

NAVIGATING AIGNG THE GEQDESIG ON THE SUPFACE OF A SFHERDII

### 5.1 GEODESIC PATHS ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHEROID.

On the surface of a sphere the geodesic paths are the great circles but on the surface of an oblate spheroid the geodesic paths are not so easily defined except that the Equator of the spheroid is a circle and its meridians are ellipses. An oblate spheroid is generated by revolving an ellipse about its minor axis. On the surface of a spheroid the shortest path between two points, $P_{o}$ and $P_{m,}$ is along the arc of a geodesic curve but this curve, unlike a great circle on the surface of a sphere, is not always a plane curve nor $1 s$ it necessarily part of a closed curve. This means that if we project the arc of the geodesic curve from the centre of a spheroid onto a plane tangent to the spheroid then the resulting locus is not, in general, a straight line as it is in the case of the gnomic projection of the great circle on a sphere.

A spheroid whose meridians are ellipses of fixed eccentricity is a better approximation to the shape of the Earth than the sphere and it is the approximation that we shall use here. In fact, the Earth may be better approximated by the smooth union of a number of spheroids and, in the science of navigation, the distances accross the different ocean basins may be calculated using a different value for e, the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse. Corresponding to the spheroid which we will adopt as the approximation to the shape of the Earth, there is a ephere whose equator coincides with the equator of the spheroid. We will refer to this sphere as the CORRESPONDIFG SPHERE. We have chose to call this sphere the "corresponding sphere" because the latitude on the surface of the ephere corresponds directly to the geodetic latitude $y$ on the surface of the spheroid.

There is another sphere which is known as the JACOBI (AUXILLIARY) SPHRRB. This sphere is, physically, the same sphere as the corresponding sphere but the relationship between the latitude on the Jacobi sphere and the geodetic latitude $y$ on the surface of the spheroid is given by

$$
\tan \psi=V\left(1-e^{2}\right) \tan \psi
$$

The latitude is known as the "Reduced" latitude of the spheroid. There is a special relationship between the geodesic arc on the surface of the spheroid whose vertex lies in latitude $\gamma v$ and the great circle on the surface of the Jacobl sphere whose vertex lies in corresponding latitude $v^{\prime}$ - at points with corresponding values of the latitude the azimuth angle of the spheroidal geodesic is the same as the azimuth angle of the great circle. This result is due to Jacobi and hence the auxilliary sphere 15 sometimes known by his name. At points where latitudes correspond the longitudes, however, do not, in general, correspond. We do not make use of the Jacobi sphere in this analysis; we make use exclusively of the relationship between the spheroid and the corresponding sphere.

On the surface of a spheroid the number of geodesic arcs joining two points $P_{c}$ and $P_{n}$ differs according to the relative positions of the two points on the surface. As in the case of the sphere there are, for instance, an infinite number of meridians which join the poles but this is not so for any other antipodean points. We have, however, the new problem of $H E A R L Y$ antipodean points, i.e. those points for which the difference of longitude exceeds a certain fixed value ( $x 179^{\circ} 24^{\prime}$ on the surface of the terrestial spheroid). These points form a special case and with which we will deal in the next chapter. In the case of antipodean points which are not the poles the shortest paths are easily defined on the surface of the spheroid - there are two equal shortest paths, both of which coincide with the path of the meridian one of which passes through the north pole and the other through the the south pole. These paths are impractical for the use of seafaring navigators but are very useful to aviators.

In this chapter we shall deal with the computation of the shortest path along a geodesic arc between two points which are not antipodean or "nearly antipodean" and for which it turns out that the geadesic arc is unique. We shall use the standard notation for
spherical coordinates with the origin of the coordinate system at 0 , the centre of the spheroid. The GBOCENTRIC LATITUDE is then denoted by and the LONGITUDE by $\theta$. The GEODETIC (ASTRONOMICAL) LATITUDE at a point $P$ on the surface is the angle between the normal to the surface at $P$ and the plane of the Equator. This is an intrinsic property of the surface and we will denote it by $y$. The ranges of values of $\forall, \psi$ and $\theta$ are

| $-1 / 2 \pi$ | $\leqslant 1 / \psi$ | $\leqslant$ | (North positive) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\leqslant$ | $\theta$ | $\leqslant$ | $2 \pi$ | (East positive).



FIGURE 5.1 - THE GEODESIC PATH PoPVPN ON THE SPHEROIDAL EARTH.

Figure 5.1 is a representation of the Earth as a regular oblate spheroid. 0 is the centre of the spheroid, $N$ is the North Pole, $S$ is the South Pole and the line $N O S$ is the axis of the spheroid. The meridian $\mathbb{N G S}$ is the Greenwich Meridian, VGE is the Equator. The arc $P_{o} P_{V}$ is the geodesic arc joining the points $P_{o}$ and $P_{n}$ and $V$ is the vertex of the geodesic . $V$ may not necessarily lie between $P_{c}$ and $P_{r} . P$ is a general point along the path of the geodesic between $P_{o}$ and $P_{r r}$ and $P_{E}$ is the point where the geodesic, when extended, crosses the Equator, or, if $P_{0}$ and $P_{r}$ lie in opposite hemispheres, $P_{E}$ is the point between $P_{0}$ and $P_{n}$.

Qo, $Q_{1} Q_{v}, Q_{n}$ are the points on the Equator where the meridians through $P_{o}, P_{,} P_{V}, P_{r i}$, respectively, cut the Equator. The angles GOQs, GOQ, GOQv, GOQn are therefore the longitudes of the points $P_{o}$,
 are the geocentric latitudes.

### 5.2 THE EQUATION OF A GEODESIC CURVE ON THE SURFACE OF THE SPHEROIDAL EARTH.

Let us consider that the Earth is a regular spheroid with equatorial radius $a_{1}$ polar radius $b$ and that the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is e. See Figure 5.2.


FIGURE 5.2

Let a position on the surface of the spheroid be determined by its geocentric latitude,, and its longitude, $\theta$. The distances are measured in units of one minute arc of the equator and the angles
are in radians. Let the geodetic latitude be $v$. and $y$ are connected by the relationship

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \psi=\left(1-e^{2}\right) \tan \psi \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since a spheroid, like the sphere, is a surface of revolution fulfilling the required continuity conditions we can, once again, apply Clairaut's Equation.


FIGURE 5.3

Let there be a geodesic arc joining two points $P_{o}$ and $P_{n}$ which passes through intermediate points $P_{1}, P_{2}, \ldots, P_{n-1}$. See Figure 5.3 . Let the geodesic arc cut the meridians through these points at angles $\gamma_{1}, \gamma_{2}, \ldots, \gamma_{n-1}$ respectively, then Clairaut's equation g1ves

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{1} \sin \gamma_{1}=\text { constant } \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r_{1}$ is the perpendicular distance from $P_{i}$ to the axis of revolution.

Let $P$ be point on the geodesic arc joining points $P_{0}$ and $P_{n}$ on the surface of a spheroid. The radius of the spheroid at point $P$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{p}=a \sqrt{\left.\frac{\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\left(1-e^{2} \cos ^{2}\right.}\right)} \tag{5,3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let the geodesic arc through $P$ cut the meridian at an angle $\gamma$. Let ds be the differential element of the geodesic at $P$. If we consider the differential triangle $P Q R$ (Figure 5.4) - $P Q$ is along the tangent to the meridian and $P R$ is along the tangent to the geodesic - we have


FIGURE 5.4

Since, on the surface of a spheroid, the perpendicular distance, $r$, of the point $P$ from the axis of revolution is given by $r=a_{p} \cos$ then, from triangle $P Q R$, we see that
$\sin \gamma=\frac{a_{p} \cos \rho d \theta}{d s}$
and 50

$$
\begin{equation*}
r \sin \gamma=a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \gamma\left(\frac{d \theta}{d s}\right)=\text { constant }=c, \text { say }, \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation (5.4) is the fundamental equation which we will use for the geodesic on the surface of the spheroid and, in the following sections, we will transform this equation to find a solution which will give us the relationship between the geocentric latitude, $月$, and the longitude, $\theta$, at any point along the path of the geodesic.

### 5.3 THE EQUATION OF THE CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION OF A GEODESIC ON

 THE SURFACE OF A SPHEROID.

FIGORE 5.5

From the centre, 0 , of the spherold, let us project the surface of the spheroid onto the surface of a coaxial cylinder of the same radius using the simple cylindrical projection (not the Mercator projection) so that the point $P$ on the surface of the spheroid corresponds to the point $P^{\prime}$ on the cylinder. See Figure 5.5.

The points $0, P$ and $P^{\prime}$ lie on a a straight line and $y$ is the perpendicular distance EP' from the Equator to the point $P^{\prime}$.

Hence $\quad y=a \tan \quad$ and $d y=\frac{a}{a^{2}+y^{2}} d y$
while $\theta$ remains unchanged.

Using these substitutions in Equation (5.4) we show, in Appendix 1 , that this leads to the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
d y^{2}=\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}\left(y^{z}-y^{2}\right) d \theta^{2} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{v}^{z}=\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right)}{c^{2}} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $c$ is the constant in Equation (5.4). The details of the algebra involved in the transformation of Equation (5.4) into (5.5) are quite lengthy.

Clearly $a_{p} \leqslant a$ and $\left|\frac{d \theta}{d s}\right|<1$ so that $a^{2}>c^{2}$ and hence $y_{v}^{z>0}$ and $y_{v}$ is real.

Note also that when $y=y_{v}$ then $\frac{d y}{d \theta}=0$ and that the point $\left(\theta_{v}, y_{\sim}\right)$ on the cylindrical projection of the geodesic arc is a turning point and so this corresponds to a vertex of the geodesic 1tself.

If we let $V$ denote the point on the geodesic where $y=y$ at $\theta=\theta_{v}$ and $=\|$ then $V$ is the vertex of the geodesic - the point at which the geodesic approaches nearest to the pole. From Bquation (5.4) we see that, since, at the vertex, $\gamma=90^{\circ}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
c=r_{v}=a_{v} \cos \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a v i s$ the radius of the spheroid at the vertex.
Taking positive square roots and separating the variables in equation (5.5) and then integrating, we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta^{\prime}-\theta_{E}=\left\{_{0}^{y^{\prime}} \sqrt{\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}} \frac{d y}{\sqrt{\left(y^{2}-y^{2}\right)}}\right. \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $y^{\prime}$ lies in the interval $\left[0 . y_{\checkmark}\right], \theta^{\prime}$ is the corresonding value of the longitude and $\theta_{E}$ is the value of the longitude when $y=0$ (at the point $P_{E}$ on the geodesic - the point where the geodesic crosses the Equator).

If $\quad f(y)=\sqrt{\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}}$
then, in the interval $\left[0, y_{\checkmark}\right], f(y)$ is continuous and non-negative so that we can apply the Second Kean Value Theorem for Integrals through which, for any interval [0.y'] contained in [0, $\left.y_{r}\right]$, there exists $X_{\nu}: 0 \leqslant x_{\nu} \leqslant y^{\prime}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta^{\prime}-\theta_{E}=f\left(x_{y}\right) \oint_{0}^{y^{\prime}} \frac{d y}{\sqrt{\left(y^{2}-y^{2}\right)}} \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

From equations (5.8) \& (5.9) we find

$$
\left.\oint_{0}^{y} \sqrt{\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+t^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+t^{2}\right]}} \sqrt{\frac{d t}{\left(y^{2}-t^{2}\right)}}=f\left(x_{y}\right)\right\}_{0}^{y} \frac{d t}{\left(y^{2}-t^{2}\right)}
$$

Substitute $t=y_{\checkmark} \sin u$ on the left hand side and simplifying the right hand side gives

$$
\oint_{0}^{u} f\left(y_{v} \sin u\right) d u=f\left(x_{v}\right) \sin -1\left(\frac{y^{\prime}}{y_{v}}\right.
$$

from which we find

$$
f\left(x_{y}\right)=\frac{1}{u} \oint_{0}^{u} f\left(y_{v} \sin u\right) d u
$$

If we write $f\left(X_{\nu}\right)=\lambda\left(\bar{x}_{\nu}\right) \quad$ and $\quad y=a \tan$
then the solution of the differential equation (5.4) may be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \phi=\tan \psi_{V} \sin \left[\lambda\left(x_{V}\right) \cdot\left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right)\right] \tag{5,10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\lambda\left(\frac{1}{X_{v}}\right)=\frac{1}{u}\left\{_{0}^{u} f(y v \in \ln u) d u\right.
$$

and

$$
u=\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{Y}{y}\right)
$$

Alternatively, as a solution of equation (5.5) we find

$$
\theta_{v}-\theta^{\prime}=\left\{_{y \cdot}^{y v} \sqrt{\frac{\left.a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}} \frac{d y}{\sqrt{\left(y^{2}-y^{2}\right)}} \quad \ldots(5.8) b\right.
$$

where we now find that $\theta_{\checkmark}$ is the value of $\theta$ at the vertex of the geodesic.

Applying the second mean value theorem to equation (5.8)b there exists a value $X_{y}^{\prime}$ in the interval [ $\left.y^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right]$ such that

$$
\theta_{v}-\theta^{\prime}=f\left(x_{y}^{\prime}\right) \xi_{y^{\prime}}^{y_{v}} \frac{d y}{\sqrt{\left(y_{z}^{z}-y^{2}\right)}}
$$

making the substitution $y=y \cos u \quad$ and writing $\quad y=a \tan$ then we find that the solution of equation (5.4) may be written in the alternative form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan =\tan \mu \cos \left[\mu\left(x_{v}^{\prime}\right) \cdot\left(\theta_{v}-\theta\right)\right] \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\mu\left(\frac{1}{x_{v}^{\prime}}\right)=\frac{1}{u} \int_{0}^{u} f(y \vee \cos u) d u
$$

and

$$
u=\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{Y}{y}\right)
$$

5.4 THE PERIOD OF THE GEODESIC ARC.

Through either of equations (5.10) we have thus defined the position of a point on the path of the geodesic curve and the general nature of this equation shows that the projected path of the geodesic follows a sinusoidal curve whose period is less than $360^{\circ}$ (since $\lambda$ $1 s$ always just a little greater than unity) and whose amplitude is $y v$. We can determine the period of the geodesic fromequation (5.8). Let the value of the longitude at the vertex of the geodesic be $\theta_{\sim}$. We know then that $\theta_{V}-\theta_{E}$ is one quarter of the sinusoidal period. If we use the substitution $y=y v \sin u$ on the right hand side of equation (5.8) we then find that the period of the geodesic which reaches its vertex in latitude $\mathrm{l}_{\mathrm{v}}$ is

$$
4 \xi_{0}^{1 / 2} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y_{v}^{2} \sin ^{2} u}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y_{v}^{2} \sin ^{2} u}} d u
$$

In Figure 5.6 we show the path of the cylindrical projection of the geodesic arc over two cycles. This shows that the geodesic arc on the surface of a spheroid which is not a meridian or the Equator winds around the spherold and does not meet itself again unless the value of $1 /\left(1-\lambda_{\checkmark}\right)$ is an integer.

We will find it convenient to use the value of the half period of the geodesic which we will denote by $\theta_{D}$. $\theta_{F}$ is therefore given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{\mapsto}=\frac{\pi}{\lambda_{V}}=2 \xi_{0}^{\pi / 2} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2} \sin ^{2} u}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2} \sin n^{2} u}} d u \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\lambda_{\checkmark} 16$ the value of $\lambda\left(x_{y}\right)$ when $y=y \checkmark$.


FIGURE 5.6 - PROJECTION OF A GEODESIC CURVE ON THE SURFACE OF A SPHEROID ONTO A COAXIAL CYLIMDER OF EQUAL DIAMETER.
5.5 THE DISTANCE ALONG THE GEODESIC ARC.

Let $s$ be the distance along the geodesic arc from the point $P_{c}$. ( $\theta_{0}, \phi_{\infty}$ ) to the point $P_{n}\left(\theta_{n}, \phi_{n}\right)$ where the difference of longitude between the two points is less than $180^{\circ}$ and such that the two points cannot be considered to be "Nearly Antipodean". Since with equation (5.7) we have determined the value of the constant in equation (5.4) we can rewrite equation (5.4) as

$$
a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta\left(\frac{d \theta}{d s}\right)=a_{v} \cos
$$

Separating the variables and integrating then gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
s=\xi_{\theta_{0}}^{\theta_{n}} \frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}}{a_{V} \cos } d \theta \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since we have $y=a \tan$ we can use equation (5.10) to express - as a function of $\theta$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \theta=\tan \phi_{V} \sin \left[\lambda\left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right)\right] \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\left.\frac{1}{\lambda}=\frac{1}{u}\right\}_{0}^{u} f\left(y_{v} \sin u\right) d u$
and $\quad u=s 1 n^{-1} Y_{v}$

In navigation the popular existing methods of computing the shortest distance on the surface of a spheroid which seem to be most widely referred to are due to Andoyer ${ }^{2 \theta}$ and Lanbert ${ }^{29}$. Both of these authors use a method which involves applying a correction to the great circle distance on the corresponding sphere and both methods can be handled by manual computation. T. Hairawazs alao applied the same method in a recent publication. Here, however, we use a Direct Method applying the equations that we have derived above and use iterative procedures where, when we are given the longitude, $\theta$, we compute $\beta, y$ and then $s$. This $1 s$ described in detail in section 5.7.
5.6 THE COURSE ALOIG THE PATH OF THE GEODESIC.

It has already been shown as a direct consequence of Clairaut's equation that, if the geodesic cuts the meridian where the latitude is at an angle $\gamma$, then we have

```
arcos
```

The angle $\gamma$ is the $A Z I M U T H$ and the course in the $360^{\circ}$ notation is derived from $1 t$.

### 5.7 COMPUTATIONAL PROCEDURES.

To begin the computation of the distance, $s$, along the path of the geodesic arc between the two points $P_{0}\left(p_{0}, \theta_{0}\right)$ and $P_{n}\left(l_{n}, \theta_{n}\right)$ we first need to know the position $P_{E}\left(0, \theta_{E}\right)$, where the geodesic arc between the points (or its extension) crosses the Equator, and $P_{\cup}\left(\phi_{v}, \theta_{v}\right)$, the position of the vertex. We will also need approximations for the values of $\lambda_{0}$ and $\lambda_{n}$. These are the values of $\lambda$ when $N=0$ and $N$, respectively. An approximation for $\lambda_{1}$ when $=$ can be determined fron the application of numerical methods to the scheme :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y_{1}=a \tan y_{1} \quad\left(y_{v}=a \tan \ell_{v}\right) \\
& u_{1}=s i n^{-1} y_{v} \\
& y_{v} \\
& \frac{1}{\lambda_{1}}=\frac{1}{u_{i}} \int_{0}^{u_{1}} f_{0}\left(y_{v} \sin u\right) d u
\end{aligned}
$$

From equation (5.9) we find, at $P_{0}$ and $P_{m}$ respectively,

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{\sim} \sin \left[\lambda_{0}\left(\theta_{0}-\theta_{E}\right)\right]-y_{0}=0  \tag{5.15}\\
& y_{\sim} \sin \left[\lambda_{n}\left(\theta_{n}-\theta_{E}\right)\right]-y_{n}=0 \tag{5,16}
\end{align*}
$$

and

We can solve these equations (5.15) and (5.16) simultaneously for $y_{V}$ and $\theta_{E}$ using the two dimensional form of Newton's method.

If we compute the values of $\theta_{E}$ and $y_{\checkmark}$ which would be found from equations (4.7) and (4.8) of Chapter 4 by considering, as a first approximation, that the Earth is a sphere, then we can use the values of $y_{\checkmark}$ and $\theta_{E}$ so found as the first approximation to the solution of equations (5.15) and (5.16) by Newton's Method. During the iterative procedure we must also compute values of $\lambda_{0}$ and $\lambda_{n}$ corresponding to $y_{v}$.

Having found satisfactory values of $\theta_{E}$ and $y_{V}$ we can then find p :

$$
p v=\tan ^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{l}
\frac{y_{v}}{a}
\end{array}\right)
$$

It may be more convenient to find the value of $\theta_{\sim}$ rather than $\theta_{E}$ in which case we find the simultaneous solutions of the equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& y_{v} \cos \left[\mu_{0}\left(\theta_{V}-\theta_{\infty}\right)\right]-y_{0}=0  \tag{5.17}\\
& y_{v} \cos \left[\mu_{n}\left(\theta_{V}-\theta_{n}\right)\right]-y_{n}=0 \tag{5.18}
\end{align*}
$$

To start the actual computation of the distance, $s$, along the geodesic arc we must first subdivide the longitude interval [ $\theta_{0}, \theta_{n}$ ] in some manner; we introduce convenient intermediate points $\theta_{1}$, $\theta_{2}, \ldots . . . \theta_{n-1}$ and find the corresponding latitudes $, \theta_{1}, \ldots$ , Mn...

To do this we set up an iterative scheme with first approximations found from the great circle on the corresponding sphere.

Given $\theta_{1}, y_{\sim}$ and $\theta_{E}$ we can find the $\left\{y_{i}\right\}_{0}$ values (the initial approximation to $y_{1}$ ) from equation 4.6 :

$$
\left(y_{1}\right)_{\infty}=y_{V} \sin \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{E}\right) \quad \text { for } \quad 1=1,2, \ldots, n-1 .
$$

The iteration steps then involve repeatedly computing $\left\{\lambda_{1}\right\}_{\text {s }}$ and $\left\{y_{1}\right\}_{s}$ using

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\{u_{i}\right\}_{j \ldots 1}=s i n^{-1} \frac{\left\{y_{i}\right\}_{1-1}}{y_{V}} \\
& \left\{\lambda_{1}\right\}_{j}=\left\{\frac{1}{\underline{1}} u_{j-1}\right\}_{0}^{\{ } f_{1}\left(y_{V-51 n} u\right) d u
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\left\{y_{1}\right\}_{1}=y_{V} \sin \left\{\lambda_{1}\right\}_{j}\left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{E}\right)
$$

for $j=1,2, \ldots$ until convergence $1 s$ deemed to have occurred when

$$
\left\{\left\{y_{i}\right\}_{j}-\left\{y_{i}\right\}_{s-1} \mid<E\right.
$$

for each 1 and for some preassigned tolerance $\epsilon>0$.

Once the iteration has converged to give values for $\lambda_{i}$ and $y_{i}$ then A. can be calculated from

$$
\|_{1}=\tan ^{-1}\left(\frac{Y^{1}}{a}\right)
$$

Given now the values of the geocentric latitudes $\left\{\rho_{1}\right\}(1=0,1, \ldots, n)$ corresponding to the longitudes $\left\{\theta_{1}\right\}$, we can compute the ordinate values for the integrand in equation (5.12). We can, for convenience, rewrite the equation in the form

$$
s=\int_{\theta_{E}}^{\theta_{n}} \frac{a_{P}^{z} \cos ^{2}}{a_{v} \cos } d \theta-\int_{\theta_{E}}^{\theta_{0}} \frac{a_{P}^{z} \cos ^{2} y}{a_{v} \cos } d \theta
$$

if $\quad \theta_{E} \leqslant \theta_{c} \leqslant \theta_{n}$
or in the form

$$
s=\hat{S}_{\theta_{0}}^{\theta_{E}} \frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \phi}{a_{v} \cos } d \theta+\oint_{\theta_{E}}^{\theta_{n}} \frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \phi}{a_{v} \cos } d \theta
$$

if $\theta_{n} \leqslant \theta_{E} \leqslant \theta_{n}$.

This enables us to take advantage of the fact that the derivative of the integrand is zero when $\theta=\theta_{E}$ which is helpful in the application of the step by step method of the Direct Cubic Spline.

In most problems in sea-going navigation where ships are usually confined to what are termed the "Havigable Latitudes" and to the main ocean basins the method of determining the distance as described above is generally applicable. There are, however, circumstances, in theory, when the method will become illconditioned. Consider, for instance, the case when the the vertex of the geodesic is in high latitude and when, as a consequence, in low latitude, the initial azimuth of the geodesic path is very small 1.e. When the angle, $\gamma$, between the meridian and the geodesic arc is small. There $1 s$ then a large change in latitude for a small change in longitude and it becomes necessary to transform equation (5.12) to allow for this.

If we differentiate with respect to $d \theta$ in equation (5.12):

$$
\frac{d s}{d \theta}=\frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}}{a_{v} \cos }
$$

and, from equation (5.8) we find

$$
\theta-\theta_{E}=\int_{0} \frac{f(a \tan u) \sec ^{2} u}{\left.\sqrt{\left(\tan ^{2}\right.} v-\tan ^{2} u\right)} d u
$$

whence

$$
\frac{d \theta}{d y}=\frac{f(a \tan \phi) \sec ^{2}}{\sqrt{\left(\tan ^{2} d v-\tan ^{2} \phi\right)}}
$$

Taking these together we find

$$
\frac{d s}{d \beta}=\frac{d s}{d \theta} \cdot \frac{d \theta}{d \beta}=\frac{f(a \tan \phi) a_{p}^{2}}{\left.a_{v} \cos / v \sqrt{ } \tan ^{2} \phi_{V}-\tan ^{2} \beta\right)}
$$

The distance, $s^{\prime}$, along the arc of the geodesic in an interval [ $\$_{0,1}^{\prime \prime]}$ contained in the interval [fo,lv] is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
s^{\prime}=\xi_{\beta_{0}}^{\prime} \frac{f(a \tan \phi) a_{D}^{2}}{\left.a_{v} \cos \beta_{V} \sqrt{ } \tan ^{2} \phi_{V}-\tan ^{2} \beta\right)} d \phi \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

The reason for the restriction is that there is a singularity in the integrand in equation (5.18) when $\| v$ at the point where the geodesic arc reaches its vertex.

It is only necessary to use equation (5.18) when the azimuth angle, $\gamma$, is small and there is a large change in the latitude over a comparatively small interval in the longitude. As the azimuth angle increases along the path of the geodesic then, clearly, we can revert to using equation (5.12) for computing the distance over the part of the geodesic curve which includes the vertex before the geodesic arc reaches its vertex where $\gamma=90^{\circ}$. In practice the point at which we revert to using equation (5.12) can be decided on the value of $\gamma$. It might be logical, for example, to choose $\gamma=45^{\circ}$ but, in most circumstances, this proceedure is not necessary and will only be required in those cases where the vertex of the geodesic is in high latitude. In the next chapters where we discuss the computation of the shortest distance between Iearly Antipodean points, where the geodesic paths do reach high latitude, then we will need to use equation (5.18) to compute the distance along the relevant arc .
5.6 THE CORRECTION METHOD OF LAMBERT.

Let us consider two points $X$ and $Y$ on the surface of the spheroidal Earth Model whose geodetic (astronomical) latitudes are $Y_{0}$ and $y_{n}$, respectively. Let PXY be the spherical triangle on the corresponding sphere (Figure 5.7).


FIGURE 5.7

In Figure 5.7 P is the pole and $p, x, y$ are the sides of the triangle PXY expressed as the angles subtended at the centre of the sphere by the arcs XY, PY and PX, respectively. Having conputed s, the great circle distance in geographical miles fron $X$ to $Y$ then the correction, $\Delta 5$, to apply to this great circle distance to give us the distance along the geodesic arc joining the points $X$ and $Y$ on the surface of the spheroid is, according to Lambert ${ }^{29}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta s= & \psi a f(3 \sin p-p) \frac{\sin ^{2} y \cos ^{2} \Delta y}{\cos ^{2} k p} \\
& -4 a f(3 \sin p+p) \frac{\cos ^{2} y \sin n^{2} \Delta y}{\sin ^{2} k p}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $f\left[=1-\sqrt{ }\left(1-e^{2}\right)\right]$ is the flattening of the spheroid and

$$
\text { where } \quad y=y\left(\psi_{0}+\psi_{n}\right) \text { and } \Delta y=\psi\left(y_{10}-y_{n}\right) \text {. }
$$

### 5.7 EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS.

As an example we will compute the path of the geodesic arc from a position $51^{\circ} 46^{\prime} \mathrm{N} 55^{\circ} 22^{\prime} \mathrm{W}$, off Belle Island in Newfoundland, to a position $55^{\circ} 32^{\prime} \mathrm{N} 7{ }^{\circ} 14^{\prime} \mathrm{W}$, off Inistrahull in Ireland. Treating the Earth as a shpere and using the great circle method the distance is found to be 1691.61 geographical miles but, along the shortest path, treating the Earth as regular spheroid, we find that the distance is 1695.24 geographical miles. Table 5.1 below gives the details of the spheroidal computation. The way points are chosen to include the vertex of the geodesic (which is oulined in the table by the dotted lines) and then points along the path so that the longitude interval from the initial position to the vertex is subdivided by evenly spaced points and then the longitude interval from the vertex to the final position subdivided by evenly spaced points also.

| WAY <br> POIIT | LOHGITUDE | LATITUDE |  | DISTAFCE | AZIMUTH |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (COURSE) |  |  |  |  |  |$|$

table 1 - path of geodesic from belle island to imistrahull.

It was considered of interest to perform the same experiments as were done by T.Hairawa ${ }^{23}$ since some of this work written here was presented in a paper to the Journal of Navigation by the author with J.E.Phythian ${ }^{30}$ as a response to the paper by Hairawa in the same Journal . In his paper Hairawa drew comparisons between the methods of computing distance on the surfaces of the sphere and the spheroid along the arcs of loxodromic curves and geodesics. In the case of the geodesics he used the correction method of Lambert. Our
computations are based on the same spheroid data used also by Hairawa (Bessel's Spherold $: ~ e=0.081697$, $a=3437.7468$ ). The method presented by us is referred to as the "Direct Method" and the method used by Hairawa as the "Correction Method". The experiment consisted of computing the shortest distance between pairs of points which are $100^{\circ}$ of longitude apart and lying on the same parallel of latitude and letting the latitude vary from $10^{\circ}$ to $80^{\circ}$. The results are shown in Table 5.2 below.

TABLE 5.2

| GEOGRAPHICAL <br> LATITUDE | $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ | $\mathrm{D}_{2}$ | $\mathrm{D}_{3}$ | $\mathrm{D}_{4}$ | $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $10^{\circ}$ | 5876.82 | 5876.83 | 5877.3 | 5877.33 | 5877.33 |
| $20^{\circ}$ | 5525.02 | 5525.02 | 5526.9 | 5526.96 | 5526.96 |
| $30^{\circ}$ | 4987.29 | 4987.29 | 4991.2 | 4991.21 | 4990.21 |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 4311.84 | 4311.84 | 4317.6 | 4317.61 | 4317.61 |
| $50^{\circ}$ | 3539.84 | 3539.86 | 3546.7 | 3546.71 | 3546.70 |
| $60^{\circ}$ | 2702.52 | 2702.55 | 2709.3 | 2709.29 | 2709.26 |
| $70^{\circ}$ | 1822.67 | 1822.71 | 1828.1 | 1828.08 | 1828.04 |
| $80^{\circ}$ | 917.31 | 917.34 | 920.3 | 920.32 | 920.28 |

In Table 5.2 :

Di is the Great Circle Distance on the surface of the corresponding sphere as computed using the Cosine Formula.
$D_{2} 18$ the Great Circle Distance on the surface of the corresponding sphere as computed by the Direct Method with $e=0$ and intermediate points taken along the Great Circle at 5 o intervals in the longitude.

Da is the shortest distance on the surface of the spheroid as found by Hairawa ${ }^{3}$ with the Correction Method.
$D_{4} 15$ the shortest distance on the surface of the spheroid as found by the Direct Method with points intermediate along the geodesic arc taken at intervals of $5^{\circ}$ in the longitude.
$D_{s}$ is the shortest distance on the surface of the spheroid as found by the Direct method with intermediate points along the geodesic arc taken at intervals of 1 i in the longitude.

The distances computed by Hairawa were probably taken between points on the same parallel of latitude because, in the Correction Method, the formula takes a particularly simple form in this instance. The latitudes of the two end points of the geodesic arc appear in the formula symmetrically and we also find that the best results are obtained from the correction method when these latitudes have the same absolute value.

In the example of the distance from the position off Belle Island in liewfoundland, to a position off Inistrahull using the Direct Method the shortest distance, found taking intermediate points along the path at intervals of approximately equal to $5^{\circ}$ in the longitude, is found to be 1695.24 geographical miles - a difference of 3.63 geographical miles from the great circle method . Lambert's method in this case gives a distance of 1695.25 geographical miles.

In response to the paper presented to the Journal of Navigation by Villiams * Phythian 30 a paper was published by Roger Bourbon ${ }^{31}$ describing an improvement to the Correction Method of Lambert and involving further iterations. He used the example of the shortest distance between the points of Belle Island and Inistrahull and gave this distance as 1695.27 geographical miles.

### 5.8 REMARKS ON THE EXPERIMEITAL RESULTS

The Mathematical problem of describing the geodesic paths on the surface of a spheroid by analytical equations is a classical one, first solved by Clairaut and given in the book by Todhunter ${ }^{3 z}$. However, it has never been easy to give a numerical solution to Clairaut's Equation (5.4) for all cases. Most solutions use iterative methods and this has required the use of computers. In the past, therefore, alternative solutions, such as the Correction

Method, have had to suffice. By modern standards the Great Circle solution is not really good enough and, since electronic computing devices are now widely used, it is possible now to obtain accurate numerical solutions. There has also been the danger, as pointed out by Hairawa ${ }^{23}$ that, in seagoing navigation, it is a practice to use formulae which are not correct theoretically. There is really no need to continue this practice now that algorithms are avallable which can compute distances to very acceptable accuracy. Indeed, as was mentioned in the introduction to the thesis, much has been published on the single problen of computing the distance along the geodesic arcs of a spheroid and claims that it can be done correct to a millimetre for a reular spheroid are justified. For navigational purposes, however, this level of accuracy is not strictly necessary and we have concentrated more on the computation of the positions along the arc of the geodesic which requires a method such as the direct method as described in this chapter.

For the positions chosen by Hairawa the results obtained from the Direct Method and the Correction Method of Lambert compare favourably. They both differ from the Great Circle Distance and, where they differ from each other, that difference is small compared to the difference each has with the Great Circle Distance.

No error analysis has been done here on the Correction Method. As to the Direct Method, we would expect that the main source of error would be due to round off, particularly in the approximation to the value of $\lambda$. The error due to round off which affects $D_{4}$ in Table 5.1 can be estimated by the difference between $D_{1}$ and $D_{2}$ which at its maximum is 0.04 geographical miles. We are confident. that, by iteration, the error in the final result due to the value of $\lambda i s$ reduced to a negligible anount. It is our belief, then. that the distance $D_{A}$ in Table 5.2 is as good an estimate to the shortest distance between the specified points on the surface of the sheroid used as the approximation to the shape of the Earth that we need to make.

When second approximations are taken the correction methods of computing the length of arc along a geodesic curve on the surface of the terrestial spheroid are quite adequate for the purpose but, from this method, we do not gain any information about the path that the geodesic takes. This is important to the navigator and this is the reason that we have chosen to use this direct method - so that by applying a step by step method of solution of Clairaut's equation we can determine intermediate points along the path, the distance between them and the angle at which the geadesic curve cuts the meridans at the intermediate points. The path of the geodesic curve can then be plotted on a Mercator chart in the traditional manner. Automatic systems for voyage planning also use intermediate points along the projected path which are called "Vay Points". The positions of these "way points" have to be determined and it is always better for the navigator to achieve the "way points" along the path as near as possible.

THE SHORTEST DISTANCE BETWEEN NEARIY ANTIPODEAN POINTS ON THE EQUATOR
6.1. INTRODUCTION.

There is a special problem in finding the shortest path geodesic arc that joins two Nearly Antipodean points on the surface of the spheroidal Earth. Nearly Antipodean Points are points which are almost $180^{\circ}$ apart in longitude but which have the same latitude in opposite hemispheres. The specific longitude at which this problem occurs is defined below. It turns out that, in this case, the shortest path can deviate quite considerably from the path predicted by the method described in Chapter 5 and from the great circle path on the corresponding sphere. When points are exactly $180^{\circ}$ apart in longitude then the shortest path between them is along the meridian. Lambert ${ }^{29}$, in his paper entitled "THE DISTANCE BETVEEN TVO VIDELY SEPARATED POINTS ON THE SURFACE OF THE EARTH", published in 1942, having given a solution which was applicable in most cases, stated that there was a particular difficulty in using the Correction Method to determine the shortest distance between two nearly antipodean points on the surface of the spheroidal Earth but this was not fully analysed in that paper. The problem has been solved by several authors since and one of the more recent is Bowring7. The method described in Chapter 5 in this thesis computes the shortest distance between two points on the spheroidal Earth model but this distance is along a geodesic arc between the points which closely follows the great circle arc on the corresponding sphere. Indeed the method here in Chapter 5 uses the great circle values as initial approximations in subsequent iterative procedures and, for similar reasons, whilst the method gives the shortest distance for most cases, it does not give the shortest distance for the case when two points are nearly antipodean. We will now adapt our procedure to correct this.

The theory of this subject has been discussed before by Helmertis and Fichot ${ }^{34}$ (among others) but it seems that there has been no such full exposition in English. Lambert, in his paper, stated that it was his intention to publish further work on this problem, in English, but, to our knowledge, this has not appeared and, as far
as we can see，no work similar to that of Fichot by another author has appeared either．We will recapitulate the statement of the problem posed by Lambert and present our solution．

## 6．2 NEARLY ARTIPODEAN POINTS ON THE EQUATOR．

Consider first，as Lambert did，two points which both lie on the Equator．Although the Equator is a geodesic curve the shortest distance between two points on the Equator is not，as one might inagine，always along the Equator．When the difference of longitude between them is greater than a certain fixed value（which according to Lambert，is approximately $179^{\circ} \mathbf{2 4 '}^{\prime}$ ）then the shortest path between them is along another geodesic arc which takes a northerly（or southerly）route in order to take advantage of the flattening of the spheroid．

At each point on the surface of a spheroid a fanily of geodesic curves is defined and these geodesic curves emanate in all directions from the point．From the poles these familes are the meridians but fron all other points the family is defined by Clairaut＇s Equation（Lyusternik ${ }^{28}$ ）written in the forn

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{p} \cos f \sin \gamma=a_{V} \cos \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where，at $a$ point $P$ along a geodesic arc，$a_{r}$ is the radius of the spheroid，fis the geocentric latitude and $\gamma$ is the angle between the geodesic and the meridian through $P$ ．This equation（6．1）was derived in Chapter 5．A particular member of the famly is specified by $⿴ 囗 ⿱ 一 一 ⿻ 上 丨 匕$（the geocentric latitude of the vertex，$V$ ，of the geodesic curve）and each member of the fanily has a slightiy different sinusoidal period．The sinusoidal period of a geodesic is related to the geocentric latitude of its vertex so that the higher the latitude of the vertex the greater is the sinusoidal period．The half period of a geodesic is the difference of longitude between two successive passes of the geodesic through the Bquator．The half
period, $\theta_{p}$, of a geodesic which reaches its vertex in latitude $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{N}}$ given by equation (5.11).

Let us consider the family of geodesic arcs which start at the point with latitude $0^{\circ}$ and longitude $0^{\circ}$, which have their end points on the Equator also and which have their vertices in the Northern Hemisphere. See Figure 6.1. The family of geodesics in the Northern Hemisphere are shown by the continuous arcs in the figure. To each member of the family, starting at the same point, there corresponds a symmetrical geodesic of equal length in the Southern Hemisphere and terminating at the same point also. The members of this family of geodesics in the Southern Hemisphere are marked by the broken lines in Figure 6.1.

The longitudes of the end points of the geodesics all fall in the interval $\quad \theta_{L} \leqslant \theta \leqslant 180^{\circ}$, where $\theta_{L}$ is Lambert's value ( $\propto 179^{\circ} 24^{\prime}$ which is given as $2 \pi \vee\left(1-e^{2}\right)$ in chapter 5 ) but the longitudes of these end points are different for each member of the family. The extreme members of the family are that part of the Equator itself between longitudes $0^{\circ}$ and $\theta_{L}$ (vertex $0^{\circ}$, half period $\theta_{L}$ ) and the meridian with end points in longitudes $0^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$ (vertex $90^{\circ}$, half period $180^{\circ}$ ). Note then, that when the difference of longitude, $\theta_{d}$, falls in the interval $\theta_{\text {L }}<\theta_{d} \leqslant 180^{\circ}$, there are three geodesic arcs joining the two points - the Northerly geodesic, the Southerly geodesic and the Equator - but only two of then - the Northerly geodesic and the Southerly geodesic - give us the equal shortest distance. The Equator will give us the shortest path when $\theta_{a}\left\{\theta_{L}\right.$, for then all three paths will coincide. This means that if the difference of longitude, $\theta_{a}$, between two points on the Equator is less than or equal to this figure then the shortest path between them is along the Equator. If, however,

$$
179^{\circ} 23.898^{\circ} \leqslant \theta_{d} \leqslant 180^{\circ}
$$

then the shortest path is along a northerly or southerly route either are possible and both give the same shortest distance.

## LATITUDE



FIGURE 6.1. CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION OF GEODESIC PATHS BETVEEN TVO HEARLY ANTIPODEAN POINTS ON THE EQUATOR.

It was shown Chapter 5 that, along the arc of a geodesic which crosses the Equator in longitude $\theta_{e}$ and reaches its vertex in latitude $V_{V}$, longitude $\theta_{v}$, at any point along the geodesic arc where the latitude is and the longitude is $\theta$, then and $\theta$ are related by the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y=a \tan \quad\left(y_{V}=a \tan \right) \\
& \theta-\theta_{E}=\oint_{0}^{y} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+t^{2}}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+t^{2}}} \sqrt{\left(y_{v}^{2}-t^{2}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

whose solution may be expressed in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \phi=\tan \phi \sin \left[\lambda\left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right)\right] \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\frac{1}{\lambda}=\frac{1}{u} \int_{0}^{u} f(y \cup \sin u) d u
$$

and

$$
u=\sin ^{-1} \frac{y}{y_{v}}
$$

This is found from the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{n}^{2} \cos ^{2}\left(\frac{d \theta}{d s}\right)=a_{v} \cos \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

which was also derived in Chapter 5 and defines the path of a geodesic on the surface of a spheroid by means of Clairaut's equation expressed as a differential equation.

It was shown in chapter 5 that the half period, $\theta_{p}$, of the geodesic is given exactly by equation (5.11) which is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{\mathrm{F}}=\left\{_{0}^{1 / 2} \sqrt{\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2} \sin ^{2} u}{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2} \sin ^{2} u}} d u\right. \tag{6,4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\pi \sqrt{ }\left(1-e^{2}\right)<\theta_{p} \leqslant \pi \quad$.

A typical geodesic whose vertex is at latitude $f$ and whose half period is $\theta_{f}$ is marked by the dotted line in Figure 6.1.

Table 6.1, in colum 2, shows the value of the half period, $\theta_{p}$, of the geodesic with its vertex in the latitude given in column 1 . This value is the value of the longitude where the geodesic, which started out in latitude $0^{\circ}$, longitude $0^{\circ}$, crosses the Equator again. $\theta_{\square}$ is computed from equation (6.4) with $y_{v}=a \tan \mu_{v}$, $a=3437.7468$ geographical miles and $e=0.081697$.

| LATITUDE OF VERTEX (\%) | HALF PERIOD $\left(\theta_{\mathrm{F}}\right)$ | DISTANCE PoPm ALOIG EQUATOR (g.m.) | DISTAICE $P_{0} P_{n}$ ALONG GEODESIC (g.m.) | INITIAL AZ IMUTH ( $\gamma$ ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $10^{\circ}$ | 179\%24.451 | 10764.45 | 10764.44 | $079.97^{\circ}$ |
| $20^{\circ}$ | $179{ }^{\circ} 26.091^{\circ}$ | 10766.09 | 10765.99 | 069.94' |
| $30^{\circ}$ | $179{ }^{\circ} 28.769^{\circ}$ | 10768.77 | 10768.38 | $059.92^{\circ}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 179032.391 | 10772.39 | 10771.32 | 049.910 |
| $50^{\circ}$ | 179으․ $850^{\circ}$ | 10776.85 | 10774.42 | 039.910 |
| $60^{\circ}$ | $179042.007^{\circ}$ | 10782.01 | 10777.43 | 029.920 |
| $70^{\circ}$ | 179-47.704 | 10787.70 | 10779.77 | 019.940 |
| $80^{\circ}$ | 179053.871 | 10793.87 | 10781.40 | $009.97^{\circ}$ |

TABLE 6.1. SHORTEST DISTANCES FOR HEARLY AHTIPODEAN POINTS ON THE EQUATOR

Table 6.1 also shows, in colum 3, the distance along the Equator between two points $P_{o}$ and $P_{n}$ when the difference of longitude between them is equal to $\theta_{p}$. This value is simply the angle $\theta_{p}$ expressed in minutes of arc and gives the result in geographical miles. Column 4 of Table 6.1 gives the shortest distance between $P_{0}$ and $P_{n}$. It was shown in Chapter 5 that the distance, $s$, along the geodesic arc between two points $P_{c}$ and $P_{n}$ whose longitudes are $\theta_{c}$. and $\theta_{n}$, respectively, is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\left\{_{\theta_{o}}^{\theta_{n}} \frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} p}{a_{V} \cos \theta_{v}} d \theta\right. \tag{6,6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where is expressed in terms of $\theta$ by equation (6.2).

Since, in this case, both points lie on the Equator and we have

or $\quad$| $\theta_{p}=\theta_{n}-\theta_{o}$ |
| :--- |
| $\theta_{p}=2\left(\theta_{v}-\theta_{\square}\right)$ |

then the distance, $s$, in Equation (6.6) is, in practice, more conveniently computed from

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon=2 \xi_{\theta_{c}}^{\theta_{V}} \frac{a_{n}^{2} \cos 2 \beta}{a_{V} \cos \beta_{V}} d \theta \tag{6,7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Given from column 1 of Table 6.1 , if this $\}$ used a combination of Equations (5.18) and (6.7) to compute the distance, $s$. We find a value ${ }^{\prime}$, and a corresponding value $\theta$ somewhere near to the point on the geodesic where $\gamma=45^{\circ}$ so that

$$
\begin{align*}
& s=\int_{0}^{\prime} \frac{f(y) a_{p}^{z}}{a_{v} \cos d v\left(\tan ^{2} \|_{v}-\tan ^{2} \phi\right)} d \phi \\
& +\oint_{\theta \cdot}^{\theta_{v}} \frac{a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}}{a_{v} \cos } d \theta \tag{6.8}
\end{align*}
$$

The procedure for evaluating the integrals in equation (6.8) were described in chapter 5.

The entry in colum 5 gives the initial azimuth, $\gamma$, of the path of the geodesic from the point on the Equator. This depends also upon the geocentric latitude of the vertex, $N v$ and $i s$ given by :

where $a_{V}$ is the radius of the spheroid at the vertex.
6.3 GEODESIC CURVES ON THE SURFACES OF OTHER PLANETS.

The Earth is usually considered to be "spheroidal" where the term spheraidal is used in the sense that the Earth is "sphere-like" because the flattening is small. The inner planets (Mercury, Mars and Venus), like the Earth, are also spheroids since the flattening of these planets is small too but, in the case of some of the outer planets, such as Jupiter, the information so far gathered would suggest that the flattening is much more distinct. Measurements would indicate that the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse of Jupiter is approximately equal to 0.3. The planet Jupiter is therefore more aptly referred to as an ellipsoid of revolution. There is no geometrical difference between a spheroid and an ellipsoid of revolution and here we will use the terms freely to mean the same thing.

In the case of the Earth and the planets the axis of rotation of the planet is also the axis of revolution about which the ellipsoidal shape of the planet is generated. Indeed, there are good reasons why this should be so - the spheroidal or ellipsoidal shape is the condition of hydrostatic equilibrium of the planet due to its circular motion about its axis. The conditions of hydrostatic equilibrium depend upon its physical constitution and its angular velocity. See, for instance, the book by Samuel Glasstoness.

Although the mathematical analysis of geodesic arcs on the surface of a spheroid as described in Chapter 5 and in the foregaing sections of this chapter have been written with the Earth in mind, where the flattening of the surface is small and the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is aproximately equal to 0.08 , it is not difficult to see that it will work equally well for a surface such as Jupiter where the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is approximately equal to 0.3 .

Ve can set up a coordinate system on the surface of a planet with latitudes and longitude defined in a similar manner to that on the Earth. The Poles of a planet will be those points on the surface
where the axis of rotation cuts the surface and the North Pole will be the pole above which an observer, looking down upon the pole, will observe the planet to be rotating anticlockwise. The equator of a planet will be a circle which is the locus of points which are equidistant from both poles. At a point $P$ on the surface of the planet the geocentric latitude,, , will be the angle subtended at the centre of the ellipsoidal planet from the Equator to $P$ and the geodetic latitude will be the angle between the normal to the surface at $P$ and the Equatorial plane. See Figure 6.3.

II


S

The longitude, $\theta$, will be the angle between the plane through a selected meridian where $\theta=0$ and the plane through the meridian at $P$ measured Eastwards. The relationship between the coordinates of a point on a geodesic curve on the surface of an ellipsoid is therefore

$$
\tan =\tan \| \sin \left[\lambda\left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right)\right]
$$

where

$$
\lambda\left(X_{\nu}\right)=-\frac{1}{f\left(X_{r}\right)}
$$

as defined in chapter 5, V is the latitude of the vertex and $\theta_{\text {e }}$ is the longitude where the geodesic crosses the Equator. The half
period of a geodesic curve on the surface of an ellipsoid is given exactly by equation (6.4).

Table 6.2 shows the values of the half period of a geodesic for given eccentricity of the meridional ellipse of an ellipsoid and at Intervals of $20^{\circ}$ in the latitude of the vertex. On the surface of a planet in which the eccentricity of the meridional ellipse is 0.25 , for instance, the geodesic curve which reaches its vertex at a point where the geocentric latitude $1540^{\circ}$ will have a half period of $175^{\circ} 41.7^{\prime}$.

TABLE 6.2 - HALF PERIODS OF GEODESIC CURVES ON THE SURFACES OF ELLIPSOIDS OF REVOLUTION.

| e | LATITUDE OF VERTEX OF GEODESIC |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $0 \%$ | $20^{\circ}$ | $40^{\circ}$ | $60^{\circ}$ | $80^{\circ}$ |
| 0.05 | 179046.5' | 179-47.3' | 179049.7' | 179-53.3' | 179057.7' |
| 0.10 | $179{ }^{\circ} 5.9^{\prime}$ | 1790 9.2' | 179018.6' | 179-33.1' | 179050.8' |
| 0.15 | 177-57.8' | $178{ }^{\circ} 5.4^{\circ}$ | $178{ }^{\circ} 27.0^{\circ}$ | 178-59.6' | 179039.5' |
| 0.20 | 176 ${ }^{\circ} 21.8^{\prime}$ | 176³5.6' | 177* ${ }^{\circ}$ 14.6 $^{\prime}$ | $178<13.0{ }^{\circ}$ | 179*23.8' |
| 0.25 | 174⒘1' | 174*39.3' | 175041.7 ${ }^{\prime}$ | 177013.7' | $179{ }^{\circ} 3.9^{\circ}$ |
| 0.30 | $171042.2^{\prime}$ | 172015.9' | 173048.4' | $176{ }^{\circ} 2.2^{\prime}$ | 178040.2' |
| 0.35 | 168036.9' | 169 ${ }^{\circ} 24.7^{\prime}$ | 171034.9' | 174039.1' | $178{ }^{\circ} 13.0^{\prime}$ |
| 0.40 | 164 ${ }^{\circ} 58.4^{\prime}$ | $166^{\circ} 4.6^{\prime}$ | 169 ${ }^{\circ} 1.7^{\prime}$ | $173^{\circ} 5.4^{\circ}$ | 177042.7' |

Although they are very close to $1 t$, none of the planets are really regular ellipsoids, and, indeed, information about the detalls of the shapes of the planets (and of the Earth even) is constantly being updated. For Navigational purposes, however, it is probably accurate enough to assume that the Earth is an oblate spheroid whose meridians are ellipses whose eccentricity is approximately equal to 0.082 . The eccentricities of the meridians of Mercury, Mars and Venus are considered to be less than this value and the eccentricities of the meridians of Jupiter and Saturn somewhat greater.

ーフー

THE SHORTEST DISTANCE BETWEEN NEARIY ANTOPODEAN POINTS

DFF THE EQLATDR

### 7.1. NEARLY ANTIPODEAN POISTS OFF THE EQUATOR.

We have analysed the case when two nearly antipodean points both lie on the Equator and a similar situation occurs when two nearly antipodean points have the same latitude in opposite hemispheres. Let the two points be $P_{o}$ and $P_{n}$. If the latitude of one of them is No, say, then the latitude of the other point will therefore be -h. As was stated in section 6.2 of Chapter 6 , from $P_{0}$ a family of geodesic curves emanates in all directions and are defined by the equation

```
ap}\operatorname{cos}\operatorname{sin}\gamma=\mp@subsup{a}{v}{}\operatorname{cos}\mp@subsup{\beta}{v}{
```

but, in this case, 价 3 .
Let us consider the geodesic whose vertex latitude, $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{v}}$ is equal to Ho. The half period of the geodesic whose vertex is in latitude ( $=\boldsymbol{l}_{0}$ ) will be $\theta_{p}$ as determined fron column 2 of Table 6.1 corresponding to the vertex latitude $f\left(=\beta_{0}\right)$ in column 1 . If, then, the difference of longitude between $P_{0}$ and $P_{n} i s$ less than or equal to $\theta_{p}$ (see Figure 6.3) the shortest distance between them will be along the geodesic arc as computed by the method described in Chapter 5.

Latitude (


FIGURE 7. 1. CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION OF GEODESIC ARC ( HALF PERIOD $=\theta_{\curvearrowleft}$ )

If, however, $\theta_{\text {f. }}<\theta_{a} \rightarrow \pi$ then the shortest path will be along a different route which takes advantage of the flattening of the spheroid and this path will be along a geodesic arc whose half period will be equal to the difference of longitude between the two points $P_{o}$ and $P_{n}$. See Figure 7.2. Once again it turns out that, when $\theta_{p}<\theta_{a} \leqslant \pi$, there are three geodesic arcs joining two nearly antipodean points off the Equator just as there are three geodesic arcs foining two nearly antipodean points on the Equator but only two of them in each case give the equal shortest paths. Between two nearly antipodean points off the Equator there are, therefore, two equal shortest paths along the arcs of geodesics whose half period is equal to $\theta_{\text {d }}$, one of which takes a northerly route through its vertex in the northern hemisphere and the other takes a southerly route through its vertex in the southern bemisphere. There is also a third geodesic, which we will call the IFTERNEDIATE GEODESIC, whose half period is equal to $\theta_{\text {f., }}$ which closely follows what would be the great circle path on the corresponding sphere and which plays a role which would be the equivalent to the Equator in the case of two nearly antipodean points on the Equator.


FIGURE 7.2. CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION OF THE GEODESIC PATH BETVEEK two nearly antipodean poimts off the equator.

Figure 7.2 shows the cylindrical projection of the three geodesic arcs between two typical nearly antipodean points off the Equator. The continuous line shows the shortest path geodesic which passes through its vertex in the northern hemisphere and the broken line shows the shortest path geadesic which passes through its vertex in the southern hemisphere. The dotted line shows the path of the Intermediate geodesic whose half period is equal to $\theta_{p}$ and which has its vertices at geocentric latitudes to. The three geodesics in Figure 7.2 all start at the point $P_{o}$, latitude po, longitude $\theta_{o}$, and end at $P_{r a}$ latitude $-\sigma_{n}$ longitude $\theta_{n}$. The northerly geodesic reaches 1 ts vertex at $P_{V}$ latitude $M_{V}$ longitude $\theta_{V}$, and crosses the Equator at $P_{E}$ where the longitude $1 s \theta_{E}$. From the point $P_{o}$ there $1 s$, In fact, a family of geodesics to points near $P_{n}$ similar to the set described in Section 6.2 and illustrated in Figure 6.1. This family has one of its end points at $P_{o}$ and the other at a point in latitude - Oo. Once again, the latitude of the vertex of the geodesic is related to 1 ts half period and, although all the geodesics leave $P_{0}$ in latitude $\sigma$ ongitude $\theta_{\infty}$, when they arrive in latitude $-\infty$ they are not all in the same longitude. This longitude will depend upon the half period of the geodesic. See Figure 7.3. The continuous arcs are the shortest path geodesics which pass through their vertices in the northern hemisphere and the broken arcs are the shortest path geodesics which pass through their vertices in the southern hemisphere. The dotted line shows the Intermediate Geodesic for this family. The limiting members of the family are the Intermediate Geodesic (vertex in latitude half period $\theta_{p}$ ) and the meridian through $P_{o}$ (vertex at latitude $90^{\circ}$, half period $180^{\circ}$ ).
When $\theta_{F}<\theta_{G} \leqslant \pi$, then the absolute value of the geocentric latitude, $l_{v}$, of the vertices of the two equal shortest path geodesics between two nearly antipodean points off the Bquator can be found by inverse interpolation of Table 6.1 , taking $\theta_{a}$ as equal to the half period in column 2 . Table 6.1 is, in fact, held on file on our computer at intervals of $1^{\circ}$ of the geocentric latitude of the vertex,

Latitude (6)


FIGURE 7.3. CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION OF GEODESIC ARCS THROUGH Po.

It was shown in Chapter 5 , and in Section 6.2 that, along a geodesic whose vertex lies in latitude $\quad v$ which crosses the Equator in longitude $\theta_{E}$; the latitude, and the longitude, $\theta$, of a point on the geodesic are related by

$$
\tan \beta=\tan \theta \sin \left[\lambda\left(\theta-\theta_{E}\right)\right]
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{\lambda}=\frac{1}{u} \int_{0}^{\int_{0}^{u}} f(y \sim \sin u) d u \\
& u=\sin ^{-1}{\underset{y}{y}}^{y}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
y=a \tan
$$

Given then, that we have two points : Po, in latitude po, longitude $\theta_{\infty}$; and $P_{n}$, in latitude - $A_{\text {. }}$ longitude $\theta_{n}$, and that, from Table 6.1, we determined $6 v$, the latitude of the vertex of the geodesic whose half period is equal to the difference of longitude, $\theta_{d}\left(=\theta_{n}-\theta_{c}\right)$ then we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{E}=\theta_{0}-\frac{1}{\lambda_{a}} s i n^{-1} y_{y_{V}} \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The shortest path, therefore, between $P_{0}$ and $P_{n}$ is along a geodesic arc which reaches its vertex in latitude $\quad\left(\begin{array}{l}\text { which corresponds to a }\end{array}\right.$ geodesic whose half period is equal to $\theta_{d}$ ) and which crosses the Equator in longitude $\theta e$.
We have determined four points along the path of the geodesic which are

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
P_{0} & \left(\theta_{0}, \theta_{0}\right) \\
P_{v} & \left(\theta_{v}, \theta_{v}\right) \\
P_{E} & \left(0, \theta_{e}\right) \\
P_{n} & \left(-\theta_{0}, \theta_{n}\right)
\end{array}
$$

See Figure 7.2.

Ve can compute the distance $P_{c} P_{n}$ piecewise along the three separate arcs $P_{s} P_{V}, P_{V} P_{E}, P_{E} P_{m}$. The distance along the arc $P_{s} P_{r}$ is then

Each integral in (7.3) will be evaluated numerically by the same method that was used in Section 5.6 for the integral in equation (5.12), subdividing the intervals of integration by points where the longitudes are $\theta_{1}(1=1,2, \ldots, n-1)$ and determining the corresponding latitudes ( $\phi_{1}$ ) using the same iterative procedure.

### 7.2 AN EXAMPLE OF SHORTEST DISTANCE BETVEEN NEARLY ANTIPODEAN POINTS.

As an example, let us consider the shortest distance fron positions off Fremantle in Western Australia clatitude 320S, longitude $115^{\circ} 30^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ approximately) to a fixed position (latitude $32 \circ \mathrm{~N}$, longitude $64^{\circ} \mathrm{V}$ ) off the island of Bermuda in the Atlantic. It is customary practice for seagoing navigators to choose departure and arrival positions for sea passages and we would not be stretching the credulity of this practice in this case if we decide that both positions should be on parallels where the absolute value of the geocentric latitude is $32^{\circ}$. By the same principle, let us fix the longitude of the arrival position off Bermuda at $64^{\circ} 00^{\circ}$ and adjust the departure position off Fremantle to suit our purposes.

Table 7.1 shows, for two points in opposite hemispheres with geocentric latitude $\pm 32^{\circ}$, the equivalent data as shown in Table 6.1 for two points on the Equator. Given Av, the latitude of the vertex, we find $\theta_{\text {F }}$ from equation (6.6). The distance along the intermediate geodesic is computed by the method of Williams \& Phythian 30 and is the distance along the path which closely follows what would be the great circle path on the corresponding sphere. The distance along
the shortest path 15 given by Table 7.1 since the shortest distance along a geodesic path with given vertex is the same for any two points between which the difference of longitude is equal to the half period of the geodesic for any geodesic on the spheroidal Earth.

| VERTEX OF GEODESIC (目) | HALF PERIOD <br> OF GEODESIC ( $\theta_{\mathrm{F}}$ ) | DISTANCE ALONG I ITERMEDIATE GEODESIC | DISTANCE ALONG SHORTEST PATH ( 8 ) | $\begin{gathered} \text { INITIAL } \\ \text { AZIMUTH } \\ \left(\gamma_{0}\right) \end{gathered}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $32^{\circ}$ | 179029.420 | 10768.9 | 10768.9 | $090.00^{\circ}$ |
| 35 | 179030.468 ${ }^{\circ}$ | 10769.7 | 10769.7 | $074.97^{\circ}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 179-32.391 | 10771.5 | 10771.3 | 064.540 |
| $45^{\circ}$ | -179034.526"- | 10773 | 107730.0 | 056-430- |
| 500 | $179 \bigcirc 36.850^{\circ}$ | 10775. 1 | 10774.4 | $049.22^{\circ}$ |
| $60^{\circ}$ | 179'042.007 | 10779.6 | 10777.4 | $036.06^{\circ}$ |

TABLE 7.1 SHORTEST DISTAFCES FOR NEARLY AKTIPODEAE POIMTS IN LATITUDB $\pm 32^{\circ}$.

Let us focus our attention on the geodesic path whose vertex lies in latitude $45 \%$ Since the difference of longitude between the departure and arrival positions must be chosen to be equal to the half period of this geodesic and we have fixed the longitude of the arrival position at $64 \circ \mathrm{~W}$, then the longitude of the departure position must be chosen as $115 \% 34.526^{\circ}$. Thus the coordinates of $P_{o}$ are

$$
\phi_{0}=-32^{\circ} 00^{\circ} \quad \theta_{0}=115 \circ 34.526^{\circ} .
$$

Corresponding to $⿴_{0}=-32^{\circ}$ we find $\tan \phi_{0}=-0.624869352$
and, since $\quad A_{v}=45^{\circ}$ then $\quad \tan \|_{v}=1$
so that

$$
\frac{y_{0}}{y_{v}}=\frac{a \tan 1_{0}}{a \tan k_{v}}=\tan \phi_{0}
$$

From equation (7.1) we also find $\lambda_{0} \approx 1.003186$.

Hence, using these values of $\tan$ po and $\lambda_{o}$ in equation (7.2), we find a value for $\theta_{E}$, the longitude of the point where the geodesic crosses the Equator :
or

$$
\begin{align*}
& \theta_{E}=\theta_{c}-\frac{1}{\lambda_{0}} s 1 n^{-1}\left(\frac{y_{G}}{y_{V}}\right) \\
& \theta_{E}=115 \circ 34.526^{\circ}-\frac{\sin ^{-1}(-0.62469352)}{1.003186} \\
& \theta_{E}=115^{\circ} 34.526^{\circ}+38^{\circ} 32.215^{\circ} \\
& \theta_{E}=154 \circ 6.741^{\circ} \text { (E) } . \tag{E}
\end{align*}
$$

1.e.

This geodesic also crosses the Equator at longitude $\theta^{\prime}$ where

$$
\theta_{E}^{\prime}=\theta_{E:}+\frac{\pi}{\lambda_{V}}
$$

where $\frac{\pi}{\lambda}$ is given by equation (5.11).

Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \theta_{E}^{\prime}=154^{\circ} 6.741^{\circ}+179^{\circ} 34.526^{\circ} \\
& \theta_{E}^{\prime}=333^{\circ} 41.267^{\circ}
\end{aligned}
$$

which is 26018.733 (W)

The longitude of the vertex, $\theta_{V}, 15$ given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \theta_{V}=\theta_{E}-2 \frac{\pi}{\lambda_{V}} \\
& \theta_{V}=154 \circ 6.741^{\circ}-89 \times 47.263^{\circ} \\
& \theta_{V}=64 \circ 19.478^{\circ} \text { (E) } .
\end{aligned}
$$

Computing the distance along the intermediate geodesic path by the method of Villiams \& Phythian 30 gives 10773.3 geographical miles. The intermediate path is the dotted line in Figure 7.3 - it crosses the Equator, halfway between the departure and arrival points, somewhere on the African Continent and has its vertices at latitude $\pm 32^{\circ}$ very nearly. It is symmetric about the Equator and closely follows what would be the great circle path on the corresponding sphere. Ve find, however, that the distance along the southerly geodesic, which is one of the two shortest pathe, is 10773.0 geographical miles. This distance is only marginally smaler than the distance along the intermediate geodesic but what is surprising
and important is that the path taken is along an entirely different route and navigable entirely by sea. The route heads southwards initially to its vertex in the South Indian Ocean at $450 S$ and 6419'E (approximately). It. passes close to the west of Capetown, crossing the parallel of $35^{\circ} \mathrm{S}$ in longitude $170^{\circ} 56^{\prime} E$ (approximately), proceeds northward through the South Atlantic Ocean and crosses the Equator in longitude $26^{\circ} 23^{\circ} W$ (approximately). In Figure 7.3 the continuous line shows this route. There is, of course, another route (along the northerly geodesic) of equal length which passes through its vertex in latitude $45^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$. This route is marked by the broken line in Figure 7.3.

figure 7.3. gEODESIC PathS from fremantle to bermuda.

Surprising again is the fact that a small change in the difference of longitude between the departure and arrival positions will result in another path which will differ considerably from the above path. This does mean that, in fact, the computation of position along the geodesic path is relatively unstable although the distance calculation itself is not.
7.3. CONCLUSION.

Theoretically speaking, nearly antipodean points, in the sense used here, are those points which have exactly the same latitude in opposite hemispheres and whose longitudes fall within the specified range which is applicable to that latitude. Naturally, points whose latitudes differ in absolute value by only small amounts which might fall inside the error bounds for the computation could also, in practice, be considered nearly antipodean for all practical pur poses.

The work in chapters 6 and 7 is an expansion of the paper by Villiams \& Phythian ${ }^{36}$ published in the Journal of lavigation.

As has been shown, the saving in distance by using a shortest path geodesic between two nearly antipodean points instead of the path along the intermediate geodesic 18 only small, and, for most practical purposes, negligible. The routes taken by the shortest path geodesics are, however, geographically significant in many cases and could provide advantageous alternatives to the navigator.

- 8 -

COMPUTATION OF $A L$ FIXES
ASTRONOMICAL FIXES
8.1 THE GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION OF A HEAVENLY BODY.

At any instant in time each heavenly body (the Sun, Moon, Planets and Stars) is directly above some point on the surface of the Earth, that is, it lies on the line which is normal to the surface of the Earth at that point. This point on the surface of the Earth is known as the GEOGRAPHICAL POSITIOX of the heavenly body and the heavenly body is also at the ZENITH of an observer placed in that position. The point $X$ in Figure 8.1 is the Geographical Position of the astronomical body *. The Zenith for an observer at point 2 on the surface of the Earth is the point in space at the extrenity of the normal to the surface at 2 . The body for instance lies at the zenith of the point $X$.


The CELESTIAL SPHERE is an imaginary sphere of no fixed radius but centred at the centre of the Barth and onto whose surface the positions of all the heavenly bodies are mapped. The Celestial Equator is the intersection of the Celestial Sphere by the plane through the Earth's Equator. Positions on the surface of the Celestial Sphere are described by angular coordinates. Declination (which is the exact equivalent of latitude) is the angular coordinate of the heavenly body North or South of the Celestial

Equator. The declination of a heavenly body immediately gives the latitude of the geographical position of the heavenly body. The angular coordinate on the surface of the Celestial Sphere fron which we obtain the longitude of the Geographical Position of the heavenly body on the surface of the Earth is the HOUR ANGLE. Hour Angle is expressed in degrees from $0^{\circ}$ to $360^{\circ}$ and is measured westwards because the bodies in the heavens themselves move westwards relative to an observer on the surface of the Earth. The GREENWICH HOUR ANGLE (GHA) of a heavenly body is the angle between the image of the Greenwich meridian on the Celestial Sphere and the meridian through the body. The longitude of the Geographical Position of the body is obtained from the GHA :

$$
\text { LOIGITUDE }=2 \pi-G H A
$$

Nautical Almanacs provide us with the information from which to compute the Geographical Position. The Nautical Almanacs are published yearly and the Declination and GHA of the Sun, Moon, and major Planets are given for hourly intervals throughout the year. Interpolation Tables to interpolate the GHA and Declination of these bodies for minutes and seconds are also given where it assumed that the hourly changes are more or less constant.
The GHA is also tabulated hourly for a reference point on the Celestial Sphere which is known as the FIRST POIHT OF ARIES. This point is a reference point established by astronomers. It is the point on the celestial equator at which the sun crosses at Vernal (Spring) Equinox. The position of the First Point of Aries varies very slightiy and $1 s$ so named because, at the time that this point was first established, it lay in the constellation of Aries. In the case of stars, Hour Angle is then measured from the FIRST POIET OF ARIES. The angle between the meridian on the Celestial Sphere which passes through the First Point of Aries and the meridian through a particular star is known as the SIDEREAL HOUR AIGLE (SHA). For a star the values of the Declination and the SHA vary little and are tabulated once every few days. Ve obtain the GHA of star (*) from

$$
\text { GHA (*) }=[\text { GHA }(\text { Aries })+\operatorname{SHA}(*)] \bmod (2 \pi)
$$

### 8.2 ASTRONOMICAL OBSERVATIONS

In Havigational terms an astronomical observation means an observation of any heavenly body - stars, sun, moon or planets. These observations are the altitudes of the heavenly bodies above the horizon taken using a sextant. For a seafaring Favigator this horizon is usually the sea horizon (VISIBLE HORIZON) and for an aviator the horizon is usually an artificial horizon (SEMSIBLE HORIZON) in a bubble sextant.

Figure 8.2 shows the Visible Horizon, VV', and Sensible Horizon SS', for an observer at the point $Z$ whose height above the surface of the Earth is h. The angle SZV $1 s$ known as the DIP of the Sea Horizon.


FIGURE 8.2-OBSERVER'S VISIBLE AMD SENSIBLE HORIZONS.

The plane through the centre of the Barth which is parallel to the Sensible Horizon is the RATIOMAL HORIZON. (RR' in Figure 8.2).
After the altitude has been read fron the sextant it 18 corrected to give the altitude of the centre of the body from the centre of the Barth above the RATIOMAL HORIZON.

The altitude of the body (*) is RO* in Figure 8.2. The point $X$ is the Geographical Position of *.
Having found the altitude of a heavenly body, *, we subtract this fron $90^{\circ}$ to give us the ZENITH DISTANCE of which is the angle 20* in Figure 8.2. When the Zenith Distance is expressed in minutes of
arc it gives us the distance in geographical miles along the Great Circle arc between the observer and the Geographical Position of the heavenly body.

This zenith distance then gives a POSITION CIRCLE on which the observer must lie. The circle has its centre at the geographical position of the heavenly body and its radius is zenith distance.


[^0]If we take two simultaneous observations of two different heavenly badies then this defines two position circles, and, at one of the points of intersection of these position circles, we will find the observer's position. The observer will usually have a good estimate of his position beforehand and this should determine, with very little possibility of ambiguity, which of the two points of intersection of the position circles is the observer's position. If it happens that there might be ambiguity, then this can be resolved by taking three observations of three distinct heavenly bodies.

### 8.3 DEFINIRG THE EQUATION OF A POSITION CIRCLE USIIG THE METHODS OF

 SPHERICAL TRIGOHOMETRY.A spherical triangle on the surface of a sphere is the area enclosed by the intersections of three great circles. Figure 8.4 shows the spherical triangle PZX. In the triangle the angles are at $P, Z$ and $X$ and the sides are $p, z$, and $x$. The sides are expressed as angles where $p, z$ and $x$ are the angles subtended at the centre of the sphere by the arcs $2 X, P Z$ and $P X$ on the surface of the sphere, respectively.
To determine a side of the triangle, $p$ say, we would use the SPHERICAL COSINE FORMULA form which we would find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\cos p=\cos 2 \cos x+\sin 2 \sin x \cos p \tag{8.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The details of how this formula is derived may be found in the book by Gow ${ }^{37}$.


FIGURE 8.4 - A SPHERICAL TRIAMGLE.

We can give a particular physical gignificance to triangle PZX and show that equation (8.1) is the equation of the position circle on the surface of the spherical Barth.

See Figure 8.5. In the figure the point $P$ is at the Pole and the arc PG is the Greenwich meridian. Let the point $X$ be the geographical position of the heavenly body and let the point 2 be the variable position of the observer who lies on a circle around the point $X$ the radius of which is the arc $Z X$ ( $=$ ap where a is the equatorial radius of the Earth in nautical miles).

If the geographical position of the point $X$ is ( $X, \lambda$ ) where $X$ is the latitude of the geographical position of the observed body (its decilination) and $\lambda$ is the longitude $(2 \pi-G H A)$ and ( $1, \theta$ ) are the coordinates of the variable point $X$ then the angles subtended by the $\operatorname{arcs} P X(=z)$ and $P Z(=x)$ are

$$
z=1 / 2 \pi-x \quad x=4 \pi \pi-
$$

The angle at $P$ is $\lambda-\theta$ and equation (8.1) becomes
$\cos p=\sin \sin x+\cos \cos x \cos (\lambda-\theta) \quad \ldots$ (8.2)
p 18 the angle obtained from the observation and equation (8.2) will give us the locus of the variable point ( $\beta, \theta$ ). The angles are all expressed in radians with latitude, $\Leftrightarrow$, and longitude, $\theta$ bounded by

$$
\begin{aligned}
-1 / 2 \pi & \leqslant \leqslant \\
0 & \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2 \pi
\end{aligned} \text { (North positive) }
$$



FIGURE 8.5 - POSITION CIRCLE

If we now obtain a second observation of a heavenly body whose geographical position is ( $X^{\prime}, \lambda^{\prime}$ ) and the resulting zenith distance angle is $p^{\prime}$ then we find

```
cos p'=\operatorname{sin}\operatorname{sin}\mp@subsup{X}{}{\prime}+\operatorname{cos}(\operatorname{cos}\mp@subsup{X}{}{\prime}\operatorname{cos}(\mp@subsup{\lambda}{}{\prime}-0)
```

The observer's position is therefore the selected solution for and $\theta$ of the pair of simultaneous non-linear equations (8.2) and (8.3). To solve these equations analytically by elimination is a lengthy procedure and its final solution requires a lot of function evaluations. One of the ways of computing the coordinates of the points of 1 ntersection of the position circles directly was presented in a paper by Arturo and Raphaele Chiesase in the Journal of Navigation. The derivation of the equations is lengthy but, in the end, the longitude, $\theta$, and then the latitude,, of the points of intersection of the position circles are given explicitly. The method involves determining the chord which is the arc of a great circle and which is common to both position circles. This was also done by Bernard Spencer ${ }^{3 s}$. The solution to the problem can, however, be effected more economically using Newton's Method for two dimensions with the Dead Reckoning Position of the observer used as a first approximation.
8.4. COMPUTATION OF AN ASTRONOMICAL RUNNING FIX.

In a RUNNING FIX the second observation, probably of the same heavenly body as the first, is taken after the abserver has travelled an appreciable distance along the arc of a loxodrone. This is a common practice and, indeed, it was customary, on almost every British Ship on Ocean passage, to compute the "noon position" (a serious ritual) from the intersection of a position line obtained from the sun approximately three hours before noon with a latitude obtained directly from the meridian passage of the sun at noon. In their paper Chiesa \& Chiesam state that it is sinply a case of transferring the geographical position of the heavenly body at the first observation along the arc of the loxodrome that the abserver has experienced, drawing the position circle around it and then
computing the intersection of this transferred position circle with the position circle obtained from the second observation. The mathematics does, however, show that the problem of transferring a position circle is more complicated than that. This was initially pointed out to this author by a colleague in a private communication. There are certain theoretical implications in the problem of transferring a position circle which were not mentioned by Chiesa \& Chiesa ${ }^{39}$. In fact, the transferred locus is no longer a circle but suffers a distortion and, in response to the the paper by Chiesa and Chiesa, this author ${ }^{40}$ wrote a paper which was also published by the Journal of Navigation.


FIGURE 8.6 DISTORTION OF A TRAHSFERRED POSITION CIRCLE.

It is, after all, the position of the observer which has changed and so, if the observer lies in a certain position on a position locus then it is that point on the locus which must be transferred. Since we are uncertain as to which exact point on the locus the observer lay at the time of the first observation then we must transfer each point of the locus the same distance on the same course along a loxodrome from that point. Now each point will transfer in a slightly different manner as can be seen by actual plotting so that the original position circle does not retain its shape. See Figure 8.6. which illustrates the extreme distortion of a transferred position circle in the vicinity of the pole.

If we move every point of the position circle (8.2) through a distance $s$ (in nautical miles) along a loxodrome on course $\alpha$, then the general point ( $\beta, \theta$ ) on the position circle (8.2) transfers to the point $\left(\beta^{\prime}, \theta^{\prime}\right)$. These coordinates are related by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi=\phi^{\prime}-\frac{5}{a} \cos \alpha \tag{8.4}
\end{equation*}
$$


where ${ }^{\prime \prime}$ is the latitude and $\theta^{\prime}$ is the longitude of a point on the transferred locus.

Using the substitutions (8.4) and (8.5) in equation (8.2) we find the equation of the transferred position locus:

(8.6)
where

$$
k=\tan \alpha\{\sec u d u
$$

$k$ 16 the difference of longitude experienced by the observer travelling along the loxodrome and is expressed in radians.

Figure 8.7 shows the actual distortion that takes place when each point of the arc $A A^{\prime}$ of a position circle is transferred 300 nautical miles on a course of $045^{\circ}$ along the arc of a loxodrome. The arc $B B^{\prime}$ is the image. The diagram is drawn to scale in the stereographic projection where a circle on the surface of the sphere is projected into a circle in the stereographic plane.


FIGURE 8.7 ARC OF POSTION CIRCLE AND TRANSFERRED POSITION CIRCLE.

Now we have shown in Chapter 2 that a loxodromic curve on the surface of a sphere is a curve of finite length which spirals towards an end limit point at each pole, therefore the loxodrome, which passes through a point $P$ on a position circle defined by equation 8.1 , where the coordinates of $P$ are ( $\phi_{p}, \theta_{F}$ ), on course $\alpha$, is of finite length to the pole so that, if the distance, $d$, steamed by the observer, is greater than the distance along the loxodrome on course $\alpha$ from $P$ to the pole, then the point $P$ has no image point on the transferred locus defined by equation 8.6. A point ( $\beta, \theta$ ) on the position circle will therefore have an image on the transferred locus only if

$$
\left|\phi+\frac{d}{a} \cos \alpha\right| \leqslant 1 / 2 \pi
$$

8.5 COMPUTIHG OBSERVED POSITION FROM A RUNHING FIX.

The observed position at the time of the second observation is the selected solution of the pair of simultaneous non-linear equations 8.3 and 8.6. Since a direct method of doing this in this case would seem to be out of the question, we use a numerical method such as Hewton's method. Ve know that there are two solutions satisfying the pair of equations; Newton's method will find one of them. The observer will ave knowledge of his Dead Reckoning position and if this is used as the first approximation then the iterative proceedure will give the observer's true position.

In the standard method of determining the observer's position in the days before the advent of the computer the position was found after an elaborate method of plotting position lines which were, in effect, those small arcs of the position circle which lay close to the dead reckoning position. Early computer methods systemised this plotting proceedure. Our chosen method of finding the observer's position will require a computer. Indeed, in a system designed to find the observer's position from astronomical observations using a computer the method of finding the position directly from the intersection of the position loci 18 probably the most efficient.

Simultaneous and running fixes can be solved equally well in one computer programme designed for both cases.

In most cases, and in sea-going Navigation particularly, where activity is restricted to what are termed the "Mavigable Latitudes", a representation of the whole of the transferred position locus is not necessary to find its intersection with a position circle. Moreover, that portion of the position circle expressed by equation 8.1, which is relevant to the observer and on which he might be expected to lie, will almost certainly have a complete image on the locus represented by equation 8.6 .

The latitude obtained by astromical observation 18 known as the ASTRONOMICAL LATITUDE, and is, in fact, the geodetic latitude and not the geocentric latitude even though it is measured from the centre of the Earth. This is because the Earth itself is only considered to be a point at the centre of the Celestial Sphere.

It must be admitted that there is often little practical value in allowing for the distortion of a position circle when the observer travels along a loxodrome, since the error in estimating the course and distance made good between the observations may well exceed any correction made by allowing for the distortion. Nevertheless we believe that it is advisable to use accurate formulae whenever possible.

## $-\quad$ -

COMPTTIING POSITION FROM DBSERVATION OF A SINGIE BODY
9.1 COMPUTING THE POSITION BY OBSERVATION AT MERIDIAN PASSAGE.

We have considered the computation of the observer's position by taking a "Running Fix", by which method the position is fixed by taking two observations of the same heavenly body some hours apart, but now we will consider the possibility of fixing the observer's position by taking observations of a single heavenly body over a much shorter interval of time.

When the geographical positions of the observer and a heavenly body have the same longitude then, provided that the observer is stationary and that the rate of change in the declination of the body is negligible, the body will be at its maximum or minimum altitude. We refer to this as the MERIDIAN PASSAGE of the heavenly body through the observer's meridian. In this circumstance the latitude of the observer can be computed directly from the altitude. See Figure 9.1 which shows a section through the Celestial Sphere in the plane of the observer's meridian at the time of meridian passage.


The Earth, and hence the observer, is just a point and lies at 0 which is at the centre of the sphere. The heavenly body is at $X$ and $Z$ is the zenith. The line EE' is the plane of the Equator and the angle E'OX is the declination which, at the same time, is the latitude, $X$, of the geographical position of the body. The line HS is the axis of rotation of the Earth. The line ROR' is the plane of the Rational Horizon (defined in chapter 8) and the angle XOR' is the altitude of the heavenly body.

In equation (8.2) $\lambda-\theta=0$ and the equation reduces to the simple form

$$
\cos p=\cos (1-x) \quad \ldots \ldots \text { (9.1) }
$$

whence we find that either

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p=-x \\
& \text { or } \quad p=-(1-x)
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\alpha$ is the true altitude of the heavenly body then $p=1 / \pi-\alpha$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f=(1 / 2 \pi-\alpha)+x \tag{9.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=x-(1 / \pi-\alpha) \tag{9.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

If, at the time of meridian passage, the exact Greenwich Mean Time can be determined then we also have a method of finding the longitude and hence the observer's position. Each one minute of time difference between the meridian passage of the heavenly body at Greenwich and the passage of the same body through the observer's meridian will be equal to fifteen minutes of arc in the difference in the longitude. This is due to the angular velocity of rotation of the Earth. The difficulty arises in the estimation of the exact moment at which the body reaches its maximum altitude. From experience, even when a heavenly body is at high altitude and where it is changing its altitude fairly rapidly, it is difficult to estimate the time of the maximum to the nearest minute. For a yachtsman, on an ocean passage and far from land where sea
conditions make astronomical observation difficult anyway, this might be an acceptable approximation - one minute would give the longitude to within fifteen minutes of arc - but for the navigator engaged in commercial business the process would have to be refined and this can be done.

If the observer is stationary, one way is to take an altitude of the heavenly body some minutes before meridian passage and while it it still changing altitude rapidly enough that this change is easily observable. After noting the exact time of this observation, we then wait until the body has crossed the meridian and then note the exact time that the body is again at the same altitude after meridian passage. The mid point of this time interval will then be the time of meridian passage and the longitude can then be determined. See Figure 9.2 in which * represents the body. The figure is a graph of altitude, $\alpha$, against time, $t$.


FIGURE 9.2
9.2 COMPUTIRG THE OBSBRVED POSITION AT THE TIME OF CULMINATION.

The accuracy of the above method of determining the maximum altitide of the astronomical body will depend also upon the fact that the body is not changing the latitude of its geographical
position at too great a rate. In the case of the sun, which is the body that is most often used in the observation of meridian passage, the maximum hourly rate of change in the declination of the sun that takes place is approximately 1 minute of arc and this occurs at the time of the equinox. At the time of the solstices this rate of change in declination of the sun is zero. At certain times, therefore, allowance should be made for this rate of change. The moon moves much more rapidly and the hourly rate of change in its declination can be as much as nearly 17 minutes of arc. Even when the moon is close to the maximum absolute value of its declination there is still an appreciable hourly rate of change. When there is an appreciable hourly rate of change in the declination of the observed body then the maximum altitude will not occur exactly at the time of meridian passage, and, when this is the case, equations (9.2) a and (9.2)b no longer hold so that we must go back to equation (8.2). We refer to the occurrence of the maximum or minimum altitude as CULMINATION.

In most cases the problem is a dual one - not only do we have to determine the difference between the time that the heavenly body crosses the observer's meridian and the time of occurence of naximum altitude due to the change in geographical position but we have the additional problem that the observer may be moving at an appreciable speed and the time of the maximum altitude might no longer coincide with the time of meridian passage due to this effect also.

Solutions to this problem have been published recently by J.I.Wilson ${ }^{41}$ and Matti Ranta ${ }^{42}$. Both authors use more or less the same mathematical analysis but, whereas Vilson offers a mainly graphical solution, Ranta uses numerical analysis. Let us first analyse the method of solution of the problem as presented by Ranta ${ }^{42}$.

We need to know the value of $\alpha$ at culmination. This is estinated by Ranta ${ }^{4 z}$ by taking a series of observations of the altitude, $\alpha$, of
the body during a time interval which includes the time of culmination, fitting a polynomial

$$
\alpha(t)=\sum_{r=0}^{n} c_{r} t^{r}
$$

and computing the value of $\alpha$ when $\quad \alpha^{\prime}(t)=0$.

If a least squares quadratic is fitted then clearly the time of culmination, $t_{c}$, is given at

$$
t_{c}=-\frac{c_{1}}{2 c_{2}}
$$

and the altitude, $\alpha_{c}$, at this time is

$$
\alpha_{c}=c_{0}-\frac{c_{1}^{2}}{4 c_{2}}
$$

Let us consider an observer in a position ( $Z$ ) on the surface of the Earth where the latitude is and the longitude is $\theta$. The observer finds the altitude, $\alpha$, of a heavenly body ( X ) whose declination is $X$ and whose Greenwich Hour Angle is $2 \pi-\lambda$. The spherical triangle, P2X, which results from this observation is shown in Figure 9.3.


FIGURE 9.3

In Figure 9.3 P is at the North Pole and, as a result, equation (8.2) gives us

```
cos}p=\operatorname{sin}\operatorname{sin}x+\operatorname{cos}(\operatorname{cos}x\operatorname{cos}(\lambda-0
```

Since $p=1 / 2 \pi-\alpha$ this can be written

```
sin}\alpha=\operatorname{sin}\operatorname{sin}x+\operatorname{cos
```

Now $\alpha, \beta_{1}, \theta$ and $\lambda$ are all functions of the time, $t$, so that, differentiating equation (9.3) with respect to $t$ gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos \alpha \frac{d \alpha}{d t}= & \cos \sin x \frac{d}{d t}+\sin \cos x \frac{d x}{d t} \\
& -\sin \left(\cos x \cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d}{d t}\right. \\
& -\cos \left(\sin x \cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d x}{d t}\right. \\
& -\cos \left(\cos x \sin (\lambda-\theta)\left(\frac{d \lambda}{d t}-\frac{d \theta}{d t}\right)\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

Re-arranging gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\cos \alpha \frac{d \alpha}{d t} & =[\cos \sin x-\sin \cos x \cos (\lambda-\theta)] \frac{d}{d t} \\
& +[\sin \cos x-\cos \sin x \cos (\lambda-\theta)] \frac{d x}{d t} \\
& -\cos \left(\cos x \sin (\lambda-\theta)\left(\frac{d \lambda}{d t}-\frac{d \theta}{d t}\right)\right. \tag{9.4}
\end{align*}
$$

From the spherical cosine formula we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\cos (\lambda-\theta)=\frac{\sin \alpha-\sin \sin x}{\cos \cos x} \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and from the spherical sine formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sin (\lambda-\theta)=\frac{\cos \alpha \sin Z}{\cos x} \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Z$ is the azimuth ( the angle at the position of the observer). If we substitute equation (9.5)a in the coefficients of $\frac{d y}{d t}$ and $d \underline{d}$ and substitute equation $(9.5) b$ in the coefficient of $\left(\frac{d \lambda}{d t}-\frac{d \theta}{d t}\right)$ in
equation (9.4) and divide the equation through by $\cos \alpha$ the result 15

```
d\alpha
```

where we have substituted

$$
\cos X=\frac{\sin (-\sin \alpha \sin X}{\cos \alpha \cos X}
$$

and

$$
\cos Z=\frac{\sin x-\sin \alpha \sin }{\cos \alpha \cos }
$$

How $\cos X$ can also be expressed in the form

```
cos}X=-\operatorname{cos}(\lambda-0)\operatorname{cos}2+\operatorname{sin}(\lambda-0)\operatorname{sin}2\operatorname{sin
```

and, if the observer is moving at a speed $V$ with northerly component $V_{*}$ and easterly component $V_{o}$, then

$$
\frac{d}{d t}=V_{*} \quad, \quad \frac{d \theta}{d t}=V_{e} \sec
$$

so that, if we substitute all this into equation (9.6) and rearrange we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{d \alpha}{d t}=\left[V_{\theta}-\cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d y}{d t}\right] \cos Z \\
& +\left[V_{\theta}+\sin (\lambda-\theta) \sin , \frac{d x}{d t}-\cos \frac{d}{d t}\right] \sin Z
\end{aligned}
$$

At the time of culmination when $\quad \frac{d \alpha}{d t}=0 \quad$ we can solve equation to give us the value of the angle $Z$ :

$$
Z=\tan ^{-1} \frac{V_{A}-\cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d x}{d t}}{V_{A}+\sin (\lambda-\theta) \sin \frac{d}{d t}-\cos \frac{d x}{d t}}
$$

where $-1 / 2 \pi<Z<1 / 2 \pi$ if the geographical position of the body is to the north of the observer and $12 \pi<2<3 / 2 \pi$ if the geographical position of the body is to the south of the observer. We can find then that the angle at $P\{=(\lambda-\theta)]$ in the spherical triangle PZX is found from the sine formula and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda-\theta=\sin ^{-1} \frac{\sin Z \cos \alpha}{\cos x} \tag{9.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Greenwich Hour Angle, GHA, of the body can be found from the Nautical Almanac for the time of culmination whence $\lambda=2 \pi-G H A$ and, hence, from equation (9.9), we can determine the longitude, $\theta$, at this time.

We can now solve equation (9.3) to give us the latitude, A, at the time of culmination. Rant ${ }^{42}$ does this by writing

$$
\sin \alpha=R \cos (p-k)
$$

which gives

and


Hence $\quad=\cos ^{-1} \frac{\sin \alpha}{\sqrt{\left(1-\sin ^{2} 2 \cos ^{2} \alpha\right)}}+\tan ^{-1} \frac{\tan x}{\cos (\lambda-\theta)}$
(9.10)

To summarise, then, the procedure for finding the observer's position at the time of culmination of a heavenly body is to take a series of altitudes of the body surrounding the time of culmination, to fit an interpolating polynomial to the data thus found giving the altitude as a function of time and, from this interpolating polynomial, to find the maximum altitude and the time at which it occurrs. We then find, by iteration, the latitude,, and the longitude, $\theta$, of the observer at the time of culmination by using equations (9.8), (9.9) and (9.10). The first approximations for and $\theta$ will be the Dead Reckoning position of the observer at the estimated time of culmination.
9.3 COMPUTATIONAL EXPERIMENT.

James N. Wilson ${ }^{41}$ provided useful data from which to experiment with the computational formula of the previous section. His data was obtained on voyages in a yacht off the coast of California near Catalina Island. He observed the altitude of the sun for approximately one hour during which time it reached its highest altitude. He himself only used those observations taken in a ten minute period which included culmination from which he estinated, graphically, the maximum altitude. We will use the same observations over the same period but we will fit a least squares quadratic to this data and, from this quadratic approximation, we will compute both the time of culmination and the corresponding altitude. The data is shown in Table 9.1 below.

|  | TIME | ALTITUDE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115039 | 32*55.1' |  |
|  | 115141 | 32*56.1' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115221 | 32*56.2' |  |
|  | 115331 | 32*58.5' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115430 | $32^{\circ} 56.9^{\prime}$ |  |
|  | 115504 | 32*57.5' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115616 | 32*57.5' |  |
|  | 115652 | 32'57.6' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115742 | $32^{\circ} 57.6^{\prime}$ |  |
|  | 115842 | 32*59.9' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 115920 | 32*57.5' |  |
| $\rightarrow$ | 120058 | $32^{\circ} 55.1^{\prime}$ |  |

TABLE 9.1

In the first experiment the least squares quadratic polynomial was fitted to all the data points of Table 9.1 and, from this we found that
(1)

$$
t_{c}=115623 \quad \alpha_{e}=32^{\circ} 58.1^{\circ}
$$

In the second experiment the same type of curve was fitted to the seven points marked in Table 9.1 by arrows on the left. In this case we found

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{c}=115614 \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\alpha_{r}=32^{\circ} 57.6^{\prime}
$$

In the third experiment we fitted the least squares quadratic to the data points in Table 9.1 marked by an arrow on the right. we found

$$
t_{e}=115611
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{c}=32^{\circ} 58.6^{\prime} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the first of these results - (1) - we then find the latitude, $\forall$, and the longitude, $\theta$, of the observer using the iterative scheme

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\tan Z_{n}=\frac{-V \cos \gamma}{\Omega \cos \beta_{n-1}+V \sin \gamma} & \ldots \ldots(9.11) a \\
\sin (\theta-\lambda)_{n}=\frac{\sin Z_{n} \cos \alpha}{\cos x} & \ldots \ldots(9.11) b \\
\cos n_{n}=\frac{\sin \alpha-\sin (n \ldots 1 \sin x}{\cos x \cos (\theta-\lambda)_{n}} & \ldots . . .(9.11) c \tag{9.11}
\end{array}
$$

$y$ is the course angle on which the observer is moving at speed $V$ knots. Since the observations of the sun were taken near to the time of the winter solstice then the rate of change in declination is zero. Wilson ${ }^{41}$ states that he was steering a course of $210^{\circ}$ at a speed of 6 knots. The altitude, $\alpha$, as given in Table 9.1 is the altitude as read from the sextant and is the altitude of the sun above the visible horizon. To this altitude we must add a correction of $13.9^{\prime}$ to give the altitude of the sun above the rational horizon. This gives $a_{c}=33^{\circ} 12^{\prime}$.

In the iterative scheme (9.11) we use the initial values

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi=33^{\circ} 40.0^{\prime} \\
& x=23^{\circ} 8.9^{\prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

The results that we obtained for and $(\lambda-\theta)$ were

$$
\theta=33^{\circ} 39.1^{\prime} \quad \lambda-\theta=0^{\circ} 21.8^{\circ}
$$

At the time of culmination, from the Nautical Almanac, we find that the Greenwich Hour Angle of the sun was $118^{\circ} 26.8^{\prime}$ so that
$\lambda=360^{\circ}-\mathrm{GHA}=241^{\circ} 33.2^{\prime}$
and

$$
\theta=241^{\circ} 33.2^{\prime}+0^{\circ} 21.8^{\prime}=241^{\circ} 55.0^{\prime}
$$

West of Greenwich this gives

```
Longitude = 118*5.0' W .
```

This longitude does not agree very well with the position found by Wilson ${ }^{30}$. He finds that the longitude of the observed position is 118.15.3' W . The difference occurs because we disagree about the time of culmination. His time of culmination, found graphically using in a way which will be described below, is 115709 . The time of culmination that we determined here in the first experiment using all the observations was 115623 .

Wilson'i did not estimate the time of culmination fron the data in Table 9.1 but took two further sets of altitudes of the sun - one set before culmination and one set after culmination. These two sets of altitudes are shown in Tables 9.2 and 9.3 :

| T I KE | ALTITUDE |
| :---: | :---: |
| 112821 | $32 \cdot 34.0{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 112859 | $32.35 .5{ }^{\prime}$ |
| 113000 | $32.34 .0{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 113044 | $32^{\circ} 36.9{ }^{\prime}$ |
| 113124 | $32.38 .5{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 113206 | $32^{\circ} 37.5{ }^{\prime}$ |
| 113242 | $32^{\circ} 40.3^{\prime}$ |
| 113312 | $32^{\circ} 40.3{ }^{\prime}$ |

TABLE 9.2

| TIME | ALTITUDE |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{lll}12 & 19 & 54\end{array}$ | $32^{\circ} 42.6{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 122110 | $32.41 .2^{\prime}$ |
| 122251 | $32^{\circ} 37.6{ }^{\prime}$ |
| $\begin{array}{lll}12 & 23 & 47\end{array}$ | $32^{\circ} 36.6{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 122450 | $32^{\circ} 35.0^{\prime}$ |
| 122601 | $32^{\circ} 33.9{ }^{\prime}$ |

TABLE 9.3

From these tables, 9.2 and 9.3, Wilson'i faired straight lines, graphically, and from their point of intersection, estimated the time of highest altitude - the time of culmination. He estimated the time of culmination at 115709 . However, fitting least squares straight lines to the data of tables 9.2 and 9.3 we find, algebraically, that the point of intersection of the straight lines estimated the time of culmination at 115851 .

In conclusion, it must be said that the data is not really of the best kind to demonstrate the method of computing the ship's position at the time of culmination although Vilson ${ }^{41}$ obtains good results from it in that he puts his observed position very close to his dead reckoning position. The data was obtained by taking observations of the sun aboard a small ketch in the open sea off Catalina Island, California. The observations were also taken in Decenber when the sun was almost at its maximum southerly declination. Wilson ${ }^{41}$ does not say what criteria he has used to fair his straight lines through the points on his graph which he reproduces in his paper but it would appear that another individual might just as well find a different result since the angle between the straight lines is small. This author, having faith in the general approach adopted by Ranta ${ }^{42}$, will endeapour to obtaln data for hinself at sea.
9.4 GENERALISATION OF THE METHOD OF RANTAAz.

It would seem that at any time other than the time of culmination we can just as well take a series of observations of the altitude, $\alpha$, of a heavenly body and, after fitting a least squares function approximation, $\alpha(t)$, through the data points, we would differentiate to find $\alpha^{\prime}\left(t_{0}\right)$ at a time, $t_{0}$, which we would choose for making an observed position. Substituting this value of $\alpha^{\prime}\left(t_{\infty}\right)$ in equation (9.7) we could use this equation to find our first and subsequent approximations to $Z_{n}$ combined then with equations (9.11)b and (9.11)c to form an iterative scheme for computing ( $\lambda-\theta$ ) and at time to.

Let us consider first that the observer is stationary - that $V=0$ in equation (9.7). The equation then becomes

$$
\frac{d \alpha}{d t}=\left[\sin (\lambda-\theta) \sin \frac{d y}{d t}-\cos \frac{d \lambda}{d t}\right] \sin Z-\left[\cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d}{d t}\right] \cos Z
$$

If we express equation (9.12) in the form

$$
R \sin (Z-k)=\frac{d \alpha}{d t} \quad \text { then } \quad Z=k+\sin ^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{R} \frac{d \alpha}{d t}\right]
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \tan k=\frac{\cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d x}{d t}}{\sin (\lambda-\theta) \sin \frac{d x}{d t}-\cos \frac{d \lambda}{d t}} \\
& R^{2}=\left[\sin (\lambda-\theta) \sin \frac{d x}{d t}-\cos \frac{d \lambda}{d t}\right]^{2}+\left[\cos (\lambda-\theta) \frac{d x}{d t}\right]^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

the procedure would then be to take a series of observations $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{x}$, $\ldots \alpha_{n}$ at $t$ mes $t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots ., t_{n}$, respectively, such that $t$, < $t_{0}<t_{n}$, to fit a function approximation $\alpha(t)$, and differentiate this to find $\alpha^{\prime}(t)$.

Using the values of $\alpha\left(t_{0}\right)$ and $\alpha^{\prime}\left(t_{0}\right)$ so found we can compute the angle $Z$ as above and then the LHA $(=\lambda-\theta)$ from

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sin (\lambda-\theta)=\frac{\sin 2 \cos \alpha\left(t_{\infty}\right)}{\cos x} \tag{9.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

To a stationary observer on the surface of the Earth the altitude, $\alpha$, of a heavenly body is given by equation (9.3):

```
sin}\alpha=\operatorname{sin}\operatorname{sin}x+\operatorname{cos}(\operatorname{cos}x\operatorname{cos}(\lambda-0
```

If we write $y=\sin \alpha$ we may, therefore, be able to approximate efficiently with a sinusoidal function of the form

$$
y=A \sin x+B \cos x+C
$$

where $x=\lambda-\theta$. The period of the trigonometric functions is the length of the apparent day sthe period elapsing between two succesive transits of the observer's meridian by the heavenly body ). If the body is observed at times $\left\{t_{i}\right\}$ with corresponding altitudes $\left\{\alpha_{1}\right\}$ then we fit $y$ to this data in the least squares sense so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
S=\left\{\left\{y_{1}-\left(A \cos x_{1}+B \sin x_{1}+C\right)\right\}^{2}\right. \tag{9.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

1s a minimum.

If we find the partial derivatives of $S$ with respect to $A, B$ and $C$ then these are the "normal" equations and furnish a set of linear equations (9.15) from which to determine the $A, B, C$ :

There are certain circumstances where the matrix defining the system (9.15) is singular or nearly so. This occurs, for instance, when the hour angle $\lambda-\theta \quad(=x)$ and the altitude $\alpha\left(=\sin ^{-1} y\right)$ are are both close to $45^{\circ}$. In such a case we will perhaps overcome this by using the least squares orthogonal polynomial approximations. (See Forsythe ${ }^{43}$ ). This approach is very similar to that of Ranta ${ }^{42}$, but it does not restrict the polynomial approximation to quadratics.
9.5 EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS.

In the absence of observed data we can test the computational procedure by using the values of the altitude of the sun given in Davis's Tables ${ }^{4.4}$. These tables are intended to give the values of the true altitude of the sun (correct to the nearest one minute of arc) at intervals of eight minutes but the tables are very old and some of the entries are not, in fact, correct to the nearest minute. We have, in fact, corrected any entry from Davis that we have found to be wrong. We have then applied the trigonometric least squares approximation to this data.

On the bridge of an ocean-going cargo ship in good observing conditions one would normally expect the readings from the sextant to give altitudes at better accuracy than one minute. The common form of the sextant used by seagoing navigators is usually read to 0.1 of minute and, although one might not expect the altitudes always to accurate to that level, it might not be unreasonable to expect accuracy to 0.2 of a minute. Using the spherical cosine
formula we have therefore complled a second table of altitudes correct to 0.25 of a minute in order to test the application of the Forsythe polynomials to our least squares approximation. The Forsythe polynomials did not give such good results when the data was expressed to the level of accuracy of one minute but gave acceptable results at the level of accuracy of 0.25 minutes.

For the purposes of testing the proceedure of computing the position of an observer we have sited the observer on the Greenwich neridian (longitude $0^{*}$ ) and at latitudes ranging from 30* to 55* Forth. The three examples have been chosen to demonstrate the method in the extreme cases that are likely to occur. The first is chosen when the sun is at high altitude, the second is chosen when the sun is at low altitude and the third is chosen when the sun is changing its deciination at the maximum rate.

EXAMPLE 1. June 10 1990-1100 GMT . Declination 23.0117 $\%$. Rate of change of declination $0.001597^{\circ} /$ hour. Hour Angle 345*9.9. Rate of change of Hour Angle -14.998 •/hour, Longitude $0^{*}$.

| LAT | 349* | $\begin{aligned} & \text { HOUR } \\ & 347^{\circ} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ANGLE } \\ & 345^{\circ} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (\lambda) \\ & 343^{\circ} \end{aligned}$ | $341^{*}$ | 339* |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30* | $77^{\circ} 56$ | $76^{\circ} 27^{\prime}$ | $74^{\circ} 53^{\prime}$ | $73^{\circ} 17^{\circ}$ | $71{ }^{\prime} 39^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 59$ ' |
| 35 ${ }^{\text {• }}$ | $74{ }^{\circ} 3{ }^{\prime}$ | $73^{\circ} 31$ | $72^{*} 16^{\prime}$ | $70^{\circ} 57^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 34^{\prime}$ | $68^{\circ} 09^{\prime}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | $70^{\circ} 38^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 46^{\circ}$ | $68^{\circ} 48^{\prime}$ | $67^{\circ} 45^{\prime}$ | $66^{\circ} 38{ }^{\text { }}$ | $65^{\circ} 26^{\circ}$ |
| 45. | $66^{\circ} 15^{\prime}$ | $66^{\circ} 35^{\prime}$ | $64^{\circ} 50^{\prime}$ | $64^{\circ} 00^{\circ}$ | $63^{\circ} 06^{\prime}$ | $62^{*} 08^{\circ}$ |
| $50^{\circ}$ | $61^{\circ} 40^{\prime}$ | $61^{\circ} 09^{\prime}$ | 60.34 | $59.55^{\prime}$ | $59^{\circ} 11^{\prime}$ | $58^{\circ} 24^{\prime}$ |
| $55^{\circ}$ | $56^{*} 59^{\circ}$ | $56^{\circ} 35^{\prime}$ | $56^{\circ} 07^{\circ}$ | $55^{*} 36{ }^{\prime}$ | $55^{\circ} 01^{\prime}$ | $54^{*} 24^{\prime}$ |

TABLE 9.5

The picture presented by the data of Table 9.5 is the "static" picture - the declination of the sun is kept fixed. Allowance for the effect upon the rate of change of altitude by the rate of change of declination is made by the added term

```
(\frac{\operatorname{sin}\alpha\operatorname{cos}x-\operatorname{cos}\alpha\operatorname{sin}x\operatorname{cos(\lambda-0)}}{\operatorname{cos}\alpha})(\frac{d}{dt})
```

The results from the computation using the above data from Table 9.5 are shown below in Table 9.6.

| LAT | TRUE <br> ALTITUDE | COMPUTED ALTITUDE | TRUE RATE | CALC RATE | HOUR ANGLE | LONGITUDE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $30^{*}$ | 75.0167 | 75.0180 | 11.8401 | 11.8377 | $14^{\circ} 49.8$ ' | $0^{\circ} 0.3{ }^{\prime} \mathrm{E}$ |
| $35^{*}$ | 72.3749 | 72.3724 | 9.5632 | 9.5662 | $14^{\circ} 50.5^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 0.4^{\prime} \mathrm{W}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 68.8854 | 68.8858 | 7.5174 | 7.5194 | $14^{\circ} 50.3$ ' | $0^{\circ} 0.2^{\prime}$ |
| $45^{\circ}$ | 64.8996 | 64.8971 | 5.8930 | 5.8964 | $14^{\circ} 50.7{ }^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 0.6{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{V}$ |
| 50* | 60.6192 | 60.6192 | 4.6322 | 4.6256 | $14^{\circ} 48.7^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 1.4^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ |
| $55^{\circ}$ | 56.1562 | 56.1577 | 3.6416 | 3.6575 | $14^{\circ} 54.0^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 3.9^{\prime}$ |

TABLE 9.6

Table 9.7 below corrects the altitudes of the sun given in Table 9.5 to 0.25 of a minute

| LAT | HOUR AIIGLE ( $\lambda$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 349* | $347^{\circ}$ | 345* | 343* | 341 * | $339{ }^{\circ}$ |
| $30^{*}$ | 77*56㐌 | $76{ }^{\text {- } 264}$ | $74.534 \cdot$ | $73^{*} 17^{\prime}$ | $71^{\circ} 39^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 59 \chi^{\prime}$ |
| $35^{\circ}$ | $74^{\circ} 394{ }^{\prime}$ | $73^{\circ} 30 \%$ | $72^{*} 16 x^{\prime}$ | $70^{\circ} 57^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 344^{\prime \prime}$ | $68^{\circ} 08 k^{\prime}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | $70^{\circ} 38^{\prime}$ | $69^{\circ} 46^{\circ}$ | 68* $48 y^{\circ}$ |  | $66^{\circ} 37{ }^{\prime}$ | $65^{*} 26 k^{\prime}$ |
| $45^{\circ}$ | $66^{\circ} 15^{\prime}$ | $65^{\circ} 354{ }^{\prime}$ | $64^{\circ} 50^{\prime}$ | $64^{\circ} 004^{\prime}$ | $63^{\circ} 06^{\prime}$ | $62^{\circ} 08^{\prime}$ |
| $50^{*}$ |  | 61*094' | $60^{\circ} 34^{\prime}$ | $59^{\circ} 54$ ' $^{\prime}$ | $59^{\circ} 111^{\prime}$ | $58{ }^{\circ} 24{ }^{\prime}$ |
| $55^{*}$ | $56^{\circ} 584{ }^{\prime \prime}$ | $56{ }^{\circ} 344{ }^{\text {c }}$ | $56^{*} 07^{\circ}$ | 55*35\% ${ }^{\text { }}$ | $55^{\circ} 014{ }^{\prime}$ | $54^{\circ} 24^{\prime}$ |

TABLE 9.7

Table 9.8 shows the results fron using the Forsythe polynomials on the data in Table 9.7

| LAT | TRUE ALTITUDE | COMPUTED ALTITUDE | TRUE RATE | $\begin{aligned} & \text { COMP } \\ & \text { RATE } \end{aligned}$ | HOUR <br> ANGLE | LONGITUDE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $30^{\circ}$ | 75.0167 | 75.0165 | 11.8401 | 11.8280 | 14**9.2 | $0^{\circ} 0.9^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ |
| $35^{\circ}$ | 72.3749 | 72.3750 | 9.5632 | 9.5605 | $14^{\circ} 49.8{ }^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 0.3$ E |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 68.8854 | 68.8869 | 7.5174 | 7.5042 | $14^{\circ} 48.4{ }^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 1.7^{\prime} \mathrm{E}$ |
| $45^{\circ}$ | 64.8996 | 64.8997 | 5.8930 | 5.9012 | $14^{\circ} 51.4^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 1.3^{\prime} \mathrm{W}$ |
| $50^{\circ}$ | 60.6192 | 60.6188 | 4.6322 | 4.6147 | $14^{\circ} 46.6^{\prime}$ | 0.3.5 E |
| $55^{\circ}$ | 56.1562 | 56.1556 | 3.6416 | 3.6370 | $14^{\circ} 49.0^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 1.1{ }^{1} \mathrm{E}$ |

## TABLE 9. 8

EXAMPLE 2. December 11 1990-1100 GMT - Declination $23^{\circ}$ S - Rate of change of declination -0.003611 •/hour. Hour Angle 13*17.3' - Rate of change of $\mathrm{HA}-14.9605 \cdot / \mathrm{hr}$.

| LAT | HOUR ANGLE ( $\lambda$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $9{ }^{*}$ | $11^{\text {- }}$ | $13^{\circ}$ | $15^{\circ}$ | $17^{\circ}$ | $19^{\circ}$ |
| $30^{\circ}$ | $36.18{ }^{\prime}$ | $35^{\circ} 57^{\circ}$ | $35^{\circ} 33^{\circ}$ | $35^{\circ} 05^{\prime}$ | $34^{\circ} 32$ ' | $33^{.57}$ |
| $35^{\circ}$ | $31^{\circ} 22^{\prime}$ | 31.04 | $30^{\circ} 42^{\text {. }}$ | 30.17 | $29^{\circ} 48^{\prime}$ | $29^{\prime} 16^{\prime}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | $26^{\circ} 27$ ' | $26^{\circ} 10^{\prime}$ | 25*51' | $25^{\circ} 28^{\prime}$ | $25^{\circ} 02^{\prime}$ | $24^{\circ} 33^{\prime}$ |
| 45* | $21^{\circ} 30^{\prime}$ | $21^{\circ} 16^{\prime}$ | $20^{\circ} 58^{\prime}$ | $20^{\circ} 38^{\prime}$ | 20.15 | $19^{\circ} 49^{\prime}$ |
| 50* | $16^{\circ} 34^{\prime}$ | $16^{\circ} 21^{\prime}$ | $16^{\circ} 06^{\prime}$ | $15^{\circ} 48^{\prime}$ | $15^{\circ} 27^{\prime}$ | $15^{\circ} 05^{\prime}$ |
| $55^{\circ}$ | $11^{\circ} 37^{\prime}$ | 11* $26^{\prime}$ | $11^{\circ} 13^{\circ}$ | 10*57 | 10*39 | 10'19 |

TABLE 9.9

The results found using the data from Table 9.9 are shown in Table 9.10 below :

| LAT | TRUE altitude | COMPUTED <br> ALTITUDE | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TRUE } \\ & \text { RATE } \end{aligned}$ | COMPUTED <br> RATE | COMPUTED HR ANGLE | LONGITUDE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $30^{\circ}$ | 35.4837 | 35.4855 | 3.3630 | 3.3690 | $13^{\circ} 18.7{ }^{\prime}$ | 0.1.4. W |
| $35^{\circ}$ | 30.6459 | 30.6450 | 3.0103 | 3.0173 | $13^{\circ} 17.2^{\prime}$ | $0^{\circ} 0.1{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | 25.7923 | 29.7906 | 2.6895 | 2.6883 | $13^{\circ} 16.9^{\prime}$ | $0 \cdot 0.41 \mathrm{~B}$ |
| $45^{\circ}$ | 20.9271 | 20.9273 | 2.3927 | 2.4042 | $13^{\circ} 21.7^{\prime}$ | $0 \cdot 3.4$ W |
| $50^{\circ}$ | 16.0532 | 16.0546 | 2.1136 | 2.1202 | $13^{\circ} 19.7^{\circ}$ | $0^{\circ} 2.4{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{W}$ |
| $55^{\circ}$ | 11.1732 | 11.1742 | 1.8471 | 1.8478 | $13^{\prime} 17.6$ | 00.0.9. W |

TABLE 9.10

EXAMPLE 3. Sept 21st 1990 - 1000 GMT. Declination $\mathrm{X}=0.728333^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$. Longitude $\theta=0$.

Hour Angle $\lambda=331^{\circ} 42.3^{\prime} . d \lambda / d t=-15.003 \cdot /$ hour $\mathrm{d} x / \mathrm{dt}=-0.01618$ •/hour

| LAT | HOUR ANGLE ( $\lambda$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $327{ }^{\circ}$ | $329{ }^{\circ}$ | 331 . | 333 - | $335^{\circ}$ | $337 *$ |
| $30^{\circ}$ | 47'06 | $48^{\circ} 28^{\circ}$ | $49^{\circ} 48^{\prime}$ | $51^{\circ} 0{ }^{\circ}$ | $52.18{ }^{\prime}$ | $53^{\circ} 28^{\prime}$ |
| $35^{\circ}$ | $43^{\circ} 58^{\prime}$ | $45^{\circ} 11^{\prime}$ | $46^{\circ} 22^{\prime}$ | $47^{\circ} 29^{\prime}$ | $48^{\circ} 36$ | $49^{\circ} 35{ }^{\prime}$ |
| $40^{\circ}$ | $40^{\circ} 35^{\circ}$ | $41^{\circ} 40^{\prime}$ | $42^{\circ} 42^{\prime}$ | $43^{\circ} 41^{\prime}$ | $44^{\circ} 37^{\circ}$ | $45^{\circ} 30^{\circ}$ |
| $45^{\circ}$ | $37.01^{\prime}$ | $37.57^{\prime}$ | $38.52{ }^{\prime}$ | $39^{\circ} 43^{\prime}$ | $40^{\circ} 32$. | $41^{\circ} 17^{\prime}$ |
| 50. | $33 \cdot 17$ | $34^{\circ} 06^{\prime}$ | 34.53 . | $35^{\circ} 37^{\prime}$ | $36^{\circ} 19$. | $36.58^{\circ}$ |
| $55^{\circ}$ | $29^{\circ} 26^{\prime}$ | $30^{\circ} 08^{\circ}$ | $30^{\circ} 48^{\circ}$ | $31^{\circ} 26^{\text { }}$ | $32^{\circ} 01^{\prime}$ | $32 \cdot 34^{\circ}$ |

TABLE 9.11

The results obtained using the data from Table 9.11 are shown in Table 9.12 below :

| LAT | TRUE ALTITUDE | COMPUTED <br> ALTITUDE | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TRUE } \\ & \text { RATE } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { CALC } \\ & \text { RATE } \end{aligned}$ | LHA | LONG |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $30^{\circ}$ | 50.2503 | 50.2507 | 9.6189 | 9.6333 | 28* $20.4{ }^{\prime}$ | 0.2.7 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{W}$ |
| $35^{\circ}$ | 46.7617 | 46.7645 | 8.4903 | 8.5017 | 20.1 ${ }^{\text {- }}$ | $2.4{ }^{\text {\% }}$ |
| 40* | 43.0497 | 43.0521 | 7.4407 | 7.4389 | 17.3 - | 0.4 E |
| $45^{\circ}$ | 39.1652 | 39.1631 | 6.4710 | 6.4698 | $17.4{ }^{\text {- }}$ | 0.3 E |
| 50. | 35.1472 | 35.1459 | 5.5753 | 5.5731 | 17.0 | 0.7 ' B |
| $55^{\circ}$ | 31.0253 | 31.0273 | 4.7445 | 4.7414 | $16.4{ }^{\circ}$ | 1.3 E |

TABLE 9.12
9.6 CONCLUSION.

In good observing conditions at sea, the kind of conditions which would be necessary in any case for taking astromical observations, the results above would be achievable. Indeed, a good observer would expect altitudes to be of greater accuracy than one minute of arc. Most micrometer sextants are read to 0.1 of arc and all computations assume this accuracy. As they stand, most of the results for the longitude found above would be very acceptable to an observer on an ocean passage.

# PART TWO <br> DIRECT SPIINE APPROXIMATIONS INTEGRALS 

$-10-$
DIRECT CUBIC SPIIINE AFPROXIMATIDNS

TO
INTEGRAIS
10.1 [NTRODUCTION.

The theme of the the Bachelor of Philosophy thesis by this author ${ }^{4 s}$ was the development of algorithms from which to compute the integral of a function by fitting cubic splines. The thesis was conceived originally to describe the methods by which the cubic spline and the bicubic spline approximations could be applied to the problem of numerical integration in one and two dimensions. During the experiments it became apparent that it was possible to approximate to the integral of a function directly, that is, to fit a cubic spline to the indefinite integral of a function with given initial conditions. The result is an algorithm which is suitable for both manual or automatic computation. Further, the method can be applied to problems in both one or two dimensions and it can be shown that its error bounds are of the same order as those for the integrated cubic splines. We use the term Direct Cubic Spline Approximation for this algorithm and the analysis used in the thesis to prove the results which lead to the steps in the computational procedure was lengthy. It is clear now, however, that the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation could be developed by simply fitting a quadratic polynomial to the integrand and then integrating. In either aproach, in addition to the function values of the integrand, an extra initial condition is required to start the computation: we will, therefore assume that the derivative of the integrand at the starting point is known. It will emerge, however, that such knowledge is not always critical in practice. In section 10.6, for instance, we show that if the subintervals are equal in length and their number is even, then this is, in theory, irrelevant. The method of the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation results in a 'step by step method of numerical integration through which the integral between any two ordinates can be found and applicable where the ordinates are randomly spaced.
10.2 NUMERICAL INTEGRATION USING CUBIC SPLINES.

The usual method of computing the integral of anction $f(x)$ over an interval [a,b] using spline functions is achieved by fitting a
spline function $s(x)$ to the integrand $f(x)$ over the interval $[a, b]$ at the points of subdivision when $[a, b]$ has been subdivided by points $x_{1} \quad(i=1, \ldots, n-1)$ such that

$$
a=x_{0}<x_{1}<\ldots \ldots \ldots<x_{n-1}<x_{n}=b
$$

and integrating $s(x)$ in place of $f(x)$.
The cubic spline is the popular spline function used for this purpose and, by applying the above procedure using the cubic spline, Davis \& Rabinowitzas derive the formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\}_{a}^{b} f(x) d x \simeq \oint_{x_{0}}^{x_{n}} \underset{s}{ }(x) d x=\sum_{1=1}^{n} \frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1-1}+f_{1}\right)-\sum_{1=1}^{n} \frac{h_{1}^{3}}{24}\left(m_{1-1}+n_{1}\right) \tag{10.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f_{1}=f\left(x_{1}\right), h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1-1}$ and the $m_{1}$ are the "Moments" of the spline - $m_{1}=s^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$.

The details of the computation of the moments of the cubic spline can be found in the books by Ahlberg, Nilson \& Walshy and P.M. Prenter ${ }^{4 \theta}$. In this dissertation, however, we are concerned with DIRECT Spline Approximation to the integral function $F(x)$ in the interval [a,b] where

$$
F(x)=\oint_{a}^{x} f(x) d x
$$

and $f(x)$ belongs to a suitable continuity class.
We begin with the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation and develop a computational scheme which is both efficient and easy to apply.
10.3 DEFINITION OF THE DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE APPROXIMATION.

In the B.Phil thesis by Williams ${ }^{45}$ a method of computing the integral

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{_{a}^{b} f(x) d x\right. \tag{10.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f(x)$ is a continuous function which is assumed to have a continuous derivative, is found by fitting a cubic spline approximation $S(x)$ directly to the function $F(x)$ over the interval [a,b] subdivided by points ( $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}$ ) ( $1=1, \ldots \mathrm{n}-1$ ) where

$$
\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{x}_{0}<\mathbf{x}_{1}<\ldots \ldots<\mathbf{x}_{n-1}<\mathbf{x}_{n}=\mathbf{b}
$$

and where

$$
F(x)=\left\{_{a}^{x} f(x) d x \quad(x \in[a, b]) \quad \ldots(10.3)\right.
$$

$S(x)$ is referred to as the DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE Approximation to the function $F(x)$.

In the paper by Phythian \&illiams ${ }^{43}$, to determine $S(x)$, we defined, at each mesh point, $x_{1}$, a "Moment", $M_{1}$, where $M_{1}=S^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ and then expressed $S^{\prime \prime}(x)$ as a piecewise continuous linear function so that, in each sub-interval $\left[x_{1-1}, x_{1}\right]$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{\prime \prime}(x)=\frac{M_{1-1}}{h_{1}}\left(x_{1}-x\right)+\frac{M_{1}}{h_{1}}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) \tag{10.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1-1}
$$

We then integrated twice and determined the constants of integration but this is a lengthy procedure and it is apparent that, since $S(x)$ is cubic, we can approximate to $f(x)$ using a suitable quadratic polynomial.
In the interval $\left[x_{0}, x_{1}\right]$ let $f(x)$ be approximated by the quadratic polynomial $q(x)$ where

$$
\begin{equation*}
q(x)=f\left(x_{0}\right)+\left(x-x_{0}\right) M_{0}+A\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2} \tag{10.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This ensures that $\left.q^{( } x_{o}\right)=f\left(x_{o}\right)$ and $q^{\prime}\left(x_{s}\right)=M_{o}=f^{\prime}\left(x_{o}\right)$.

We also have

$$
\begin{align*}
& q\left(x_{1}\right)=f\left(x_{1}\right)=f\left(x_{1}\right)+h_{1} M_{0}+A h_{1}^{z} \ldots(a) \\
& q^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right)=M_{1}=M_{1}+2 A h_{1} \quad \ldots .(b) \tag{b}
\end{align*}
$$

so that, eliminating $A$ from the equations (a) and (b) gives the relationsh1p

$$
M_{1}=2\left(\frac{f_{1}-f_{0}}{h_{1}}\right)-M_{c}
$$

In any interval $\left[x_{1-1}, x_{1}\right]$ we can similarly define a quadratic polynomial $q_{1}(x)$ using the values $f_{1} \ldots, f_{1}$ and $M_{1-1}$
(where $f_{i}=f\left(x\left({ }_{1}\right)\right.$ ) so that

$$
q_{1}(x)=f_{1-1}+\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) M_{1-1}+A_{1}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) 2 \ldots(10.6)
$$

and thereby find the recursive scheme from which to determine the $M_{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{1}=2\left(\frac{f_{1}-f_{1-1}}{h_{1}}\right)-M_{1-1} \tag{10.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we now integrate $q_{1}(x)$ over the interval $\left\{x_{1-1}, x_{1}\right\}$ we find

$$
S_{1}-S_{1-1}=h_{1} f_{1-1}+1 / 2 M_{1-1} h_{1}+1 / 3 A h^{3}
$$

where $S_{i}=S\left(x_{1}\right)$.
We find that

$$
A_{1}=\left(\frac{M_{1}-M_{1}-1}{2 h_{1}}\right)
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{1}-S_{1-1}=\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{6}\left(M_{1}+2 M_{1 \ldots 1}\right)+h_{1} f_{1 \ldots 1} \tag{10.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the form of the recursive schene for $S_{\text {a }}$ that was first arrived at. If, however, we find $q_{1}\left(x_{1}\right)$ from equation (10.6), multiply this by $y_{2} h_{1}$, substitute for $A_{1}$ and add this to equation (10.8) we find the "symmetric" form of the recursive scheme for $S_{1}$ :

$$
S_{1}-S_{1-1}=\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
$$

and this is the form that we now use in the computational scheme. Not only does this provide a more efficient algorithm for computing the $S_{1}$ but it also facilitates the estimation of its error bound.

### 10.4 THE COMPUTATIONAL SCHEME.

The method of computation used to evaluate integral in Equation (10.1) using the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation on the mesh

$$
a=x_{o}<x_{1}<\ldots \ldots<x_{11}=b
$$

is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (i) } S_{0}=0: M_{0}=f^{\prime}(a) \\
& \text { (ii) } h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1-1} \\
& \text { (ii1) } M_{1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)-M_{1-1}} \quad \begin{array}{l}
\text { for } \\
\text { (iv) } \\
\text { (ivin } \\
S_{1}=S_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

(10.9)

Ultimately

$$
S_{n}=\oint_{a}^{b} f(x) d x+E_{n}
$$

where $E_{n}$ is the error term.

It can be shown by direct sumation that the scheme (10.8) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{n}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{1=1}^{n} h_{1}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right) \quad-\frac{1}{12} \sum_{1=1}^{n} h_{1}^{2}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right) \tag{10.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (10.10) is of the same form as the truncated Euler Maclaurin integration formula and is in "symmetric" form. If fe $C^{4}[a, b]$ and we expand the integral

$$
\oint_{x_{1} \ldots 1}^{x_{1}} f(x) d x
$$

using the Euler-MacLaurin expansion formula (which can be found in a book such as that by Scheidec), summing over all the intervals gives the form

$$
\begin{align*}
& \xi_{a}^{b} f(x) d x=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left[\frac{h_{i}}{2}\left(f_{i}+f_{i-1}\right)-\frac{h_{i}^{2}}{12}\left(f_{i}^{\prime}-f_{i-1}^{0}\right)\right] \\
& \quad+\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{h_{i}^{4}}{720}\left(f_{i}^{(3)}-f_{i-1} ;\right)+O\left(h^{7}\right) \tag{10.11}
\end{align*}
$$

where $h$ is the maximum length of any subinterval, $h_{1}$, in the interval[a, b].
If we compare Equations (10.10) and (10.11) we see that the first twoterms of the Euler-MacLaurin Integral Expansion have the same coefficients as the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation.
10.5 ERROR ESTIMATE FOR THE DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE

If, then, we subtract Equation (10.11) from (10.10), we find

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{n}-\left\{_{a}^{b} f(x) d x\right. & =\frac{1}{12} \sum_{i=1}^{n} h_{i}^{z}\left[\left(f_{i}^{\prime}-M_{i}\right)-\left(f_{i-1}^{\prime}-M_{i-1}\right)\right] \\
& -\frac{1}{720} \sum_{i=1}^{n} h_{i}^{4}\left(f_{i}^{\left.(3)-f_{i-1}^{(3)}\right)}+O\left(h^{7}\right)\right. \tag{10.12}
\end{align*}
$$

Let us define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F_{1}=\left\{_{a}^{x_{1}} f(x) d x\right. \\
& E_{i}=S_{i}-F_{i} \\
& e_{1}=f_{i}-M_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

From the computational scheme (10.9) we have

$$
S_{1}-S_{1-1}=\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
$$

and the Euler MacLaurin integral expansion gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{1}-F_{1 \ldots 1}=\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1 \ldots 1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(f_{1}^{1}-f_{i-1}^{\prime}\right) & \left.\left.+\frac{h^{4}}{720}\left(f_{i}^{3}\right\rangle-f_{i-1}\right\rangle\right) \\
& +O\left(h^{5}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So that if we write

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
E_{1}=S_{i}-F_{1} & \left(\text { the error in } S_{1}\right) \\
e_{i}=f_{i}^{\prime}-M_{1} & \left(- \text { the error in } M_{1}\right)
\end{array}
$$

we have
$E_{1}-E_{1-1}=\frac{h_{i}^{2}}{12}\left(e_{1}-e_{i-1}\right)-\frac{h_{i}^{1}}{720}\left(f_{i}^{(3)}-f_{i}(3)\right)+O(h>)$
(10.13)

Let us suppose that

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{1}=f_{i}^{\prime}-M_{1}=A_{1} f_{i}^{3\rangle}+B_{1} f_{i}(4\rangle+C_{1} f_{i}^{(B\rangle}+\ldots \tag{10.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

From

$$
\mathbf{M}_{1}+M_{1-1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)
$$

we have

$$
e_{1}+e_{1-1}=\left(f_{1}^{\prime}+f_{i-1}^{\prime}\right)-\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)
$$

Expanding this about $x=x_{1-k}$ writing $t=k_{1} h_{1}$ and $f=f_{1}-{ }_{m}$ etc.,


$$
\begin{aligned}
&+\frac{1}{t}\left[\left(f+t f^{\prime}+k t z f^{\prime \prime}\right.\right.\left.+1 / 6 t^{3} f^{(3)}+\ldots \ldots\right) \\
&\left.-\left(f-t f^{\prime}+1 / 2 f^{\prime 2}-1 / 6 t^{\prime}(3)+\ldots\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$=2\left(f^{\prime}+1 / 2 t^{2} f^{(i s)}+1 / 24 t^{4} f^{(3)}+\ldots-f^{\prime}-1 / 6 t^{3} f^{(3)}-1 / 120 t^{4} f^{(5)}-\right)$

$$
=2 / 3 t^{2} f(3)+1 / 15 t^{4} f^{(s)}+\ldots
$$

giving $\quad e_{i}+e_{i-1}=\frac{h_{i}^{2}}{6} f_{i-1}^{(3)}+\frac{h_{i}^{4}}{240} f_{i-h}^{(s)}+O\left(h^{\epsilon}\right)$

If we now expand the expression on the right hand side of Equation (10.14) about $x=x_{1-i}$ using the same notation for $t$ and $f$ we find

```
    en + en-1 =
```



```
+ B1 [f(4)
```


+ ......
(10.16)

Comparing this with Equation (10.15) we find the relationships

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{1}+A_{1-1}=\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{6} \\
& \frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(A_{1}-A_{1-1}\right)+\left(B_{1}-B_{1-1}\right)=0 \\
& \frac{h_{i}^{2}}{8}\left(A_{1}+A_{1-1}\right)+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(B_{i}-B_{1-1}\right)+\left(C_{1}+C_{1-1}\right)=\frac{h_{1}^{4}}{240}
\end{aligned}
$$

and from these relationships we can generate the $A_{1}, B_{1}$ and $C_{1}$ once we have suitable starting values.

We can see that $\quad e_{1}=f_{i}-M_{1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =f_{i}-\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(f_{1}-f_{0}\right)+f_{C}^{\prime} \\
& =\left(f_{i}^{\prime}+f_{i}^{i}-h_{1} f_{i}^{\prime \prime}+\frac{h}{2}_{i}^{2} f_{i}^{(3)}-\frac{h}{6}_{i}^{3} f_{i}^{(4)}+\ldots . .\right) \\
& -\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left[f_{1}-\left(f_{1}-h_{1} f_{i}+\frac{h}{2}_{1}^{2} f_{i}^{n}-\frac{h}{6}_{i}^{3}(3)+\frac{h_{1}^{4}}{2} f_{i}^{(4)}+\ldots\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=\frac{h^{2}}{6} f(3)-\frac{h^{3}}{12} f(A)+\ldots
$$

This gives us (since $A_{1}=0$ ) $\quad A_{1}=\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{6}$
and $\quad A_{1}=1 / 6\left(h_{1}^{2}-h_{1}^{2} f \cdots \pm h_{2}^{2}+h_{1}^{2}\right)$

Now equation (1.13) gives us

$$
E_{1}-E_{1} \ldots, \frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(e_{1}-e_{1} \ldots,\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{4}}{720}\left(f^{(3)}-f^{(3)}\right)+O\left(h^{\prime}\right)
$$

which, since $E_{c}=0$ and $e . s=0$ yields directly

$$
E_{1}=\frac{h_{1}^{4}}{72} f_{m}^{\langle 3\rangle}-\frac{h_{i}^{5}}{120} f_{m}^{\langle 4\rangle}+O\left(h^{43}\right)
$$

When $1>1$ and we expand about $x=x_{1}$ n and using equation (10.14) we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{i}-E_{i \ldots 1}=\frac{h_{i}^{2}}{12}\left(A_{i}-A_{i \ldots,}\right) f_{i-h}^{(3)}-\frac{h_{i}^{5}}{720} f_{i-h}^{(4)}+O(h>) \tag{10.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
E_{1}-E_{1-1}=\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{72}\left(h_{1}^{2}-2 h_{1-1}^{2}+\ldots+2 h_{2}^{2} \pm 2 h_{1}^{2}\right) f_{i-h}^{(3)}+O\left(h^{\beta}\right)
$$

Now $\quad E_{1}=\sum_{r=1}^{1}\left(E_{r}-E_{r-1}\right) \quad\left(E_{o}=0\right)$
hence
$E_{1}=\sum_{r=2}^{1}\left[\frac{h_{i}^{2}}{72} f_{i-1}^{s}\left(h_{r}^{z}-2 h_{r-1}^{z}+\ldots \ldots \neq 2 h_{z}^{z} \pm 2 h_{1}^{2}\right)\right]+E_{1}+O\left(h^{s}\right)$

If $h$ is the maximum absolute value of subinterval and $f$ (i) is the maximum absolute value of $f^{(1)}(x)$ in $\left.[a, b)\right]$ then
$\left|E_{1}\right| \leqslant\left.\frac{h^{2}}{72} f(3)\right|_{r=2} ^{1}\left(h_{r}^{2}-2 h_{r-1}^{2}+\ldots \neq 2 h_{i z}^{2} \pm 2 h_{1}^{2}\right)\left|+\left|E_{1}\right|+0\left(h^{3}\right)\right.$ ...... (10.18)

How $\sum_{r=2}^{1}\left(h_{r}^{2}-2 h_{r-1}^{2}+\ldots \ldots+2 h_{2}^{2} \pm 2 h_{1}^{2}\right)$

$$
=\sum_{r=2}^{1} h_{r}^{2}+2 \sum_{r=2}^{1-1} \sum_{j=1}^{r}(-1)(r-1+1) h_{j}^{z}
$$

and the second term of this is a triangular sum. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =-h_{1-1}^{2}+h_{1-2}^{2}-h_{1-3}^{2}+\cdots \cdots h_{\xi}^{2} \mp h_{2}^{2} \pm h_{i}^{2} \\
& -h_{1-2}^{2}+h_{1-3}^{2}-\ldots \ldots . \overline{+} h_{3}^{2} \pm h_{2}^{2} \mp h_{1}^{2} \\
& -h_{i-3}^{2}+\cdots \cdot . . \quad \pm h_{3}^{2} \mp h_{2}^{2} \pm h_{1}^{2} \\
& -h_{3}^{2}+h_{2}^{2}-h_{1}^{2} \\
& -h_{2}^{2}+h_{1}^{2} \\
& \text { - } h_{i}^{2} \\
& =-h_{1 \ldots 1}^{2}-h_{i-3}^{2}-\cdots . . .-h_{2}^{2} \quad \text { if } i \text { is even } \\
& =-h_{1-1}^{2}-h_{i-3}^{2}-\ldots . . .-h_{1}^{2} \\
& \text { If } 1 \text { is odd. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we can write the inequality (10.18) in the form

$$
\left|E_{1}\right| \leqslant \frac{h^{2}}{72} f^{(3)}\left|\sum_{r=1}^{1} h_{r}^{2}+\sum_{r=2}^{1-1} \sum_{j=1}^{r}(-1)^{(r-s+1)} h_{j}^{2}\right|+O\left(h^{5}\right)
$$

and, if it is even, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mid h_{i}^{2}+h_{i-1}^{2}+h_{1-2}^{2}+h_{1-3}^{2}+\ldots .+h_{3}^{2}+h_{2}^{2}+h_{1}^{2} \\
& -2 h_{i-1}^{2}-2 h_{1-3}^{2} \quad-2 h_{2}^{2} \mid \\
& =\left|\left(h_{1}^{2}-h_{1-1}^{2}\right)+\left(h_{1-2}^{2}-h_{1-3}^{2}\right)+\ldots+\left(h_{3}^{2}-h_{2}^{2}\right)+h_{1}^{2}\right| \leqslant \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \\
& \text { or, if ils odd; } \\
& \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{rrr}
h_{1}^{2}+h_{1-1}^{2}+h_{1-2}^{2} & +h_{1-3}^{2}+\ldots .+h_{3}^{2}+h_{2}^{2}+h_{1}^{2} \\
-2 h_{1-1}^{2} & -2 h_{1-3}^{2} & -2 h_{3}^{2}
\end{array}\right. \\
& =\left|\left(h_{1}^{2}-h_{1-1}^{2}\right)+\left(h_{1-\overline{2}}^{2} h_{1-3}^{2}\right)+\ldots+\left(h_{2}^{2}-h_{1}^{2}\right)\right| \leqslant \frac{1}{2} h^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that this gives us

$$
\left|E_{1}\right| \leqslant \frac{1}{1} \frac{h^{4}}{4} f(3)+\frac{1 h^{5}}{7} \frac{1}{0} f^{(4)}+O\left(h^{7}\right)
$$

When $h$ is constant simplifications of this error bound take place in particular cases (as will be shown in the following sections) but it has been pointed out that there is also one interesting case which occurs when we make the arbitrary choice $A_{0}=h^{2} / 12$ for then we find that $A_{1}=h^{2} / 12$ for all 1 and equation (10.17) yields :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{i}=-7 \overline{2}^{h^{5}} \sum_{r=1}^{i} f_{r=1}^{(4)}+O\left(h^{7}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

It is not clear whether or not this can be put to practical advantage in any way but it does pose an interesting question.
10.6 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN THE DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE APPROXIMATIOR AND OTHER IFTEGRATION RULES.

In the epecial case where $h i s$ constant and $n$ is fixed, the formula that results from (10.9) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{n}=\frac{h}{2} \sum_{1=1}^{n}\left(f_{1}+f_{1,1}\right)-\frac{h^{?-}}{12}\left(M_{n}-f_{0}^{\prime}\right) \tag{10.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Under the same circumstances the Euler-Maclaurin formula for the function $f(x) \in C^{4}[a, b]$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\{_{a}^{b} f(x) d x=\frac{h}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(f,+f_{1}\right)-\frac{h^{2}}{12}\left(f_{r,}^{\prime}-f_{0}^{\prime}\right)\right. \\
& +\frac{n h^{5}}{720} \mathrm{f} v(x) \\
& \text { for some } X: a \leqslant x \leqslant b
\end{aligned}
$$

If $f^{\prime}, \mathrm{ls}$ known, and we replace $M_{n}$ in (10.19) by this known value, then this will give us the truncated form of the Euler-MacLaurin formula andthen the error in $S_{n}$, if $f(x) \in C^{A}[a, b]$, as an approximation to theintegral of $f(x)$ in $[a, b]$ is

$$
\frac{(b-a) h^{*}}{720} f i v(x)
$$

It is interesting to note too that if we consider the usual cubic spline approximation, $s(x)$, to $f(x)$ in $[a, b]$, it was shown in the B. Phil thesis by Williamsss (p.10) that the formula for the integral given by Davis \& Rabinowitzas can be written as

$$
\oint_{a}^{b} f(x) d x=\left\{_{a}^{b} E(x) d x=\frac{h}{2} \sum_{1=1}^{n}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h^{2}}{12}\left(f_{n}^{\prime}-f_{a}^{\prime}\right)\right.
$$

so that the formula for the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation is, when $f_{n}$ is known, the same as that for the integrated Cubic Spline.

Moreover, if we consider the special case of the scheme using equation (10.8) or equation (10.9) for $S_{1}$ computed for $n=2$ then we find that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S(a)=0: M_{0}=f^{\prime}(a): h=h_{h}(b-a) \\
& M_{1}=2\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right) / h-M_{1-1} \\
& S_{1}=S_{1 \ldots 1}+h^{2}\left(M_{1}+2 M_{1 \ldots 1}\right) / 6+h f_{1-1} \\
& S_{1}=S_{1 \ldots 1}+\frac{h}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1 \ldots 1}\right)-\frac{h^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

1s exactly Simpson's First Rule so that

$$
S_{z}=\frac{h}{3}\left(f_{0}+4 f_{1}+f_{2}\right)
$$

See Phythian and Williams ${ }^{51}$.

The above case illustrates the more general rule that, in the equal interval case, if the number of intervals, $n$, is even, then $S_{n}$ is independent of $f^{\prime}(a)$ so that, in theory, provided $n$ is always even, any value of $f^{\prime}(a)$ would serve as the initial value of M. To prove this let

$$
\mathbf{M}_{1+1}+\mathbf{M}_{1}=\frac{2\left(\mathbf{f}_{1+1}-\mathbf{f}_{1}\right)}{h}
$$

and $\quad M_{1}+M_{1-1}=\frac{2\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)}{h}$
Adding these gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{n}_{1+1}+2 \mathbf{M}_{1} & =\frac{2\left(f_{1+1}-f_{1}\right)}{h}+\frac{2\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)}{h}-\mathbf{M}_{1-1} \\
& =\frac{2\left(f_{1+1}-f_{1}\right)}{h}+\frac{2\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)}{h}-\frac{2\left(f_{1-1}-f_{1-2}\right)}{h}+M_{1-2} \\
& =\frac{2\left(f_{1+1}-f_{1}\right)}{h}+\sum_{r=1}^{1} \frac{(-1)^{1-r} 2\left(f_{r}-f_{r-1}\right)}{h}+(-1)^{1+r+1} f_{0}^{\prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

for $1 \geqslant 1$.

When $1=1$ we have

$$
H_{1}+2 f_{0}^{\prime}=\frac{2\left(f_{1}-f_{0}\right)}{h}+f_{0}^{\prime}
$$

The integral $S_{n}$ is found from

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{n}=\sum_{i=0}^{n-1}\left\{\frac{h^{2}}{6}\left(M_{1+1}+2 M_{1}\right)+h f_{1}\right\} \tag{10.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

and, when the sum over $i$ is taken, the terms (-1) $1-r+1 f_{0}^{\prime}$ cancel in pairs so that, if $n$ is even, the aggregate of these terms is zero. It can be shown from (10.20) that, when $n=4$,

$$
S_{4}=\frac{h}{3}\left(f_{4}+4 f_{3}+2 f_{2}+4 f_{1}+f_{0}\right)
$$

which is the compound form of Simpson's Rule and, for all $n$ while 2 nh is less than the length of the interval of integration, we also find

$$
S_{2 n}=\frac{h}{3}\left(f_{2 n}+4 f_{2 n-1}+2 f_{2 n-2}+\ldots+2 f_{2}+4 f_{1}+f_{0}\right)
$$

Conversely, if a function $f(x)$, which is assuned to have a continuous first derivative and which is defined over an interval which is subdivided by a regular mesh, is integrated numerically by the compound form of Simpson's Rule, then the values \{S21\} so determined are, in fact, node values at the even numbered node points of the Direct Cubic Spline Aproximation to the Integral of $f(x)$ over the same mesh. The Direct Cubic Spline, in a sense therefore, "interpolates" Simpson's Rule and the interpolating function, $S(x)$, is given by

$$
\begin{gathered}
S(x)=S_{1-1}+\frac{M_{1}}{6 h}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) 3+\frac{M_{1-1}}{2 h}\left[h^{2}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{2}-1 / 3 h^{3}+1 / 3\left(x-x_{1}\right): 3\right] \\
+\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) f_{1-1}
\end{gathered}
$$

10.7 THE PERFORMANCE OF THE DIRECT CUBIC SPLINE APPROXIMATION.

If we compare the error bound (10.14) of the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation with the error term for Simpson's First Rule over two intervals then we find that they are of the same form. Also, in light of the above relationship between the Direct Cubic Spline computational scheme, with $h$ constant and $n=2$, and Simpson's First Rule, we can infer that the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation to an Integral Function is a generalisation of Simpson's First Rule.

The advantages that the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation has over other similar integration rules (Simpson and low order Gaussian rules) is that, for the Direct Cubic Spline, the ordinates do not have to be defined at specific points, the integral can be computed step by step between any two ordinates and the number of ordinates need not be specified in advance.
On the debit side, however, we find that, employing computational scheme (10.8) for the Direct Cubic Spline, since $S(x)$ is cubic, the integrand, $f(x)$ is approximated by a piecewise quadratic polynomial and therefore its derivative, $f^{\prime}(x)$, by a plecewise straight line. Experience shows that the method gives its best results over intervals where the derivative, $f^{\prime}(x)$, is monotonic. Ve can , however, generalise by going one step further - fitting a direct quartic spline to the integral and using the derivative computed from the $X$-Spline of Clenshaw and Negus ${ }^{132}$. This is dealt with in the next chapter.

### 10.8 SOME APPLICATIONS OF THE DIRECT CUBIC SPLIDE APPROXIMATION.

A number of applications of the use of the Direct Cubic Spline have appeared in Part One of this thesis. The method is particularly useful in the procedure used to compute the points along the arcs of geodesic curves on the surfaces of the Sphere and the Spherald. For Navigational purposes it is quite usual, in practice, to compute points step by step along these arcs and the distances between them and, since we also know the boundary derivatives in most cases, the method suits the situation well. There are also some applications in ship technology to which the method is very well suited.

- 11 -

HIGHER ORIER DIRECT SPIINE AFFROXIMATIDNS
$T O$
INTEGRALS
11.1 INTRODUCTION.

Having achieved some measure of success with the Direct Cubic Spline approximation to an integral it would seem logical to investigate whether or not any higher order splines can be used in the same way to compute the values of integrals by a recursive scheme similar to that developed for the Cubic Spline and whether or not any improvement in results can be achieved thereby. Experience shows, for instance, that the cubic spline gives best results when the first derivative of the integrand is monotic - the computational scheme (1.9) does not respond well when a point of inflexion in the integrand occurs in the interval of integration - a higher order spline may well give better results in this respect.

### 11.2 DERIVATION OF THE DIRECT QUARTIC SPLINB APPROXIMATION .

Let $S(x)$ be the Quartic Spline Approximation to the function $F(x)$ in the interval [a,b] where

$$
F(x)=\oint_{a}^{x} f(t) d t
$$

and $f(x)$ is assumed to be continuous with continuous first and second derivatives.

Let the interval $[a, b]$ be subdivided by points $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{1-1}$ such that

$$
a=x_{0}<x_{1}<\ldots \ldots<x_{r n-1}<x_{1 r}=b .
$$

$S(x)$ is the plecewise quartic polynomial in [a,b] such that, in the subinterval [ $\left.\mathrm{x}_{1} \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{1}\right]$

$$
S(x)=s_{1}(x)=a_{1} x^{4}+b_{1} x^{3}+c_{1} x^{2}+d_{1} x+e_{1}
$$

and $S(x)$ has continuous derivatives $S^{\prime}(x), S^{\prime \prime}(x)$ and $S^{(x)}(x)$ throughout [a,b]. Since the indefinite integral $S(x)$ is a quartic polynomial then the integrand will be a cubic. In the interval [ $x_{o}, x_{1}$ ] this cubic can be suitably defined by $c_{1}(x)$ where

$$
c_{0}(x)=f_{0}+M_{0}\left(x-x_{0}\right)+N_{1-1}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+A\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{3} \ldots(11.1)
$$

this ensures that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& c_{o}\left(\mathbf{x}_{c}\right)=\mathbf{f}_{o} \\
& c_{o}^{\prime}\left(\mathbf{x}_{c}\right)=\mathbf{M}_{\infty}=\mathbf{f}_{c} \\
& c_{0}^{\prime \prime}\left(\mathbf{x}_{c}\right)=\mathbf{N}_{0}=\mathbf{f}_{0}^{\prime \prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

Where, in addition to the function values at the mesh points we assume that at $x=x_{0}$ the values of $f^{\prime}\left(x_{0}\right)$ and $f^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{0}\right)$ are known. If we now differentiate $c_{0}(x)$ twice and determine $c_{0}^{n}\left(x_{1}\right)$ we find

$$
A=\frac{\left(N_{1}-N_{\Omega}\right)}{6 h_{1}}
$$

where $\quad h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{s}$.
From $c_{0}\left(x_{1}\right)$ and $c_{o}^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ we then find recursive equations through which we can determine $N_{1}$ and $M_{1}$ respectively. We then integrate co(x) so that

$$
S_{1}=\int_{x_{0}}^{x_{1}} C_{0}(x) d x
$$

We find: $\quad H_{1}=\frac{6}{h_{1}^{2}}\left(f_{1}-f_{5}\right)-\frac{6}{h_{1}} M_{s}-2 N_{0}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& M_{1}=M_{0}+\frac{h}{1}_{2}^{2}\left(N_{1}-N_{0}\right) \\
& S_{1}=S_{0}+\frac{h_{1}^{3}}{24}\left(N_{1}+3 H_{0}\right)+\frac{h}{2}_{2}^{2} M_{c}+h_{1} f_{0} \tag{11.2}
\end{align*}
$$

### 11.3 COMPUTATIOHAL SCHEME FOR THE DIRBCT QUARTIC SPLIRE APPROXIMATION.

Given the initial values

$$
S_{0}=0 ; f_{0}=f\left(x_{c}\right) ; M_{0}=f^{\prime}\left(x_{0}\right) ; H_{0}=f^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{c}\right)
$$

then we can compute $H_{1}, M_{1}$ and $S_{1}$ from the computational scheme (11.2) and then, if we define a suitable cubic polynomial $c_{1}(x)$ in the interval $\left[x_{1-1}, x_{1}\right]$ :

$$
c_{1}(x)=f_{1-1}+M_{1-1}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)+N_{1-1}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{2}+A_{1}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{3}
$$

then we find a possible scheme for coroputing the $S_{1}$.
The scheme here is :

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { (11) } h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1} \ldots, \\
& \text { (11i) } N_{i}=\frac{6}{h_{i}^{2}}\left(f_{i}-f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{6}{h_{1}} M_{1-1}-2 N_{1-1} \\
& \text { (iv) } M_{i}=M_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(N_{1}+N_{1-1}\right) \\
& 1=1, \ldots, n \\
& \text { (v) } S_{1}=S_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}^{3}}{24}\left(N_{1}+3 N_{1-1}\right)+\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{2} M_{1 \ldots 1}+h_{i x-1} \\
& \text { where, ultimately, } S_{n}=\left\{_{a}^{b} f(x) d x+E_{n}\right. \tag{11.3}
\end{align*}
$$

and $E_{n}$ is the error term.
11.4 EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS FOR DIRECT QUARTIC SPLINE APPROXIMATION. The results found from applying the computational scheme (11.3) are rather disappointing. It would seem that this recursive scheme is unstable for the computation of the $N_{1}$ as 1 increases although it is quite good in the early stages.

When $f(x)=s i n x$, for instance, we compute the approximation

$$
S(x) \simeq F(x)=\int_{0}^{\frac{1}{\pi} \pi} \delta \ln x d x=0.2928932188
$$

using 5 intervals each of length $\pi / 30$ and find that $S_{s}=0.292895509$ which gives an error of 0.00000229 , Yet, when we compute the same integral, using 10 intervals each of length $\pi / a c$. we find that $S i o=0.2928647048$ which gives an error of 0.000028514 - a ten fold increase in the error for half the interval spacing ! However, if we modify the method, taking advantage of the self starting capability and then, when 133 , computing $L^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ and $L^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ - the first and second derivatives of the cubic Lagrange Polynomial approximation to $f(x)$ over the
interval $\left[x_{1} \ldots, x_{1}\right]$ and setting $K_{1}=L^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right), M_{1}=L^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ then we find

$$
S_{5}=0.292878578
$$

and

$$
S_{10}=0.2928912169
$$

which is more in line with what we might have expected. It should be noticed though that the $S_{s}$ computed this way is not so good as the $S_{r}$ found by applying the scheme (11.3) without modification. The problem, without doubt, seems to be that the equation (iii) of scheme (11.3) is unstable as i increases. If, however, we modify the scheme in such a way that
(1) $\quad M_{1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)-M_{1-}$,
(11) $\quad \mathbf{N}_{1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)-N_{1-1}$
and so that equation (v) of scheme (11.3) remains unchanged then we will find

$$
S_{5}=0.2929580156
$$

and

$$
S_{10}=0.2929128574 .
$$

Although the result for $S_{i o}$ is an improvement, and, in further experiments, as $h$ is made smaller, the results show a definite tendency to converge, these results are not as good, even so, as the results obtained by applying scheme (10.9) for the Direct Cubic Spline defined on the same interval with the same mesh.
If, then, following along the 11 nes taken in chapter 10 , we look for the "symmetric" form for the Direct Quartic Spline approximation, we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{1}=S_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{4}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)+\frac{h_{1}^{3}}{12}\left(\mathbf{N}_{1}+N_{1-1}\right) \tag{11.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

but then, substituting

$$
\begin{align*}
& H_{1}+N_{1-1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right) \quad \text { in (11.5) results in } \\
& S_{1}=S_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right) \tag{11.6}
\end{align*}
$$

which 18 exactly the same as the "symmetric" form of the Direct CUBIC Spline approximation since $M 1=S^{\prime \prime}\left(X_{1}\right)$.

This would imply that the Direct Quartic Spline approximation does not exist independently. Indeed, as it will be shown below, every even order Direct Spline Approximation can, in the "symmetric" form, be shown to be the same as the lower order Direct Spline Approximation, and this would imply, generally, that none of the even order Direct Spline Approximations exist independently.

This, however, prompts the question as to whether there might be another way in which we can improve our estimate of the derivative of the spline given at the mesh points by the $M_{i}$. One possibility is given by Clenshaw \& Negus ${ }^{41}$

In an interval [ $\left.x_{0,} x_{n}\right]$ subdivided by points $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n-1}$ such that

$$
x_{10}<x_{1}<\ldots \ldots x_{n-1}<x_{n}
$$

We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1}-1 \\
& \beta_{1}=\frac{h_{1+1}}{h_{1}+h_{1+1}} \\
& Y_{1}=\frac{f_{1}-f_{1-1}}{h_{1}} \\
& M_{1}=\left(1-\beta_{1}\right)=Y_{1+1}+\beta_{1}\left(3-\beta_{1}\right) Y_{1}-\beta_{1} M_{1-1} \ldots \ldots(11,7)
\end{aligned}
$$

then

We find this by fitting a suitable cubic polynomial approximation to $f(x)$ in the interval $\left[x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}\right]$ where we have the given values $f_{1-1}, f_{i}, f_{i+1}$ and a computed value of $H_{i-1}$, In the interval [ $x_{0}, x_{2}$ ] these values wil be $f_{0}, f_{1}, f_{2}$ and $f_{0}^{\prime}$.

Let the cubic polynomial be $c_{1}(x)$ where

$$
C_{1}(X)=f_{1-1}+K_{1-1}\left(x-X_{1-1}\right)+A\left(x-X_{1-1}\right){ }^{2}+B\left(X-x_{1-1}\right): B
$$

This ensures that $c_{1}\left(x_{1-1}\right)=f_{1-1}$ and $c_{1}^{\prime}\left(x_{1-1}\right)=M_{1-1}$.

When we equate $C_{1}(x)$ at $x=x_{1}$ and $x=x_{1-1}$ to $f_{1}$ and $f_{1-1}$, respectively, then we find simultaneous linear equations from which to determine the constants $A$ and $B$. We omit the detalls here.

The computational scheme which results when we use this form of the "moment", $M_{1}$, as found from the limiting form of the Clenshaw-Negus X-spline is given by the scheme which leads to the equation (11.7) with the symmetric form of the quartic/cubic spline approximation to $S_{1}$ :
We compute $h_{1}=x_{1}-x_{1} \ldots$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \beta_{1}=\frac{h_{1} \cdots 1}{h_{1}+h_{1+1}} \\
& Y_{1}=\frac{f_{1}-f_{1-1}}{h_{1}} \\
& M_{1}=\left(1-\beta_{1}\right) 2 Y_{1+1}+\beta_{1}\left(3-\beta_{1}\right) Y_{1}-\beta_{1} M_{1-1} \\
& S_{1}=S_{1}-1+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1} \ldots\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{12}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(11.8)

The results found from experiments with constant $h$, conducted using the two computational schemes; (10.9) and (11.8), are shown in Table 11.1.

|  | n | SIMPLE FORM |  | CLERSHAV-REGUS |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\mathrm{M}_{1}$ | $S_{n}$ | $\mathrm{Mn}^{\text {n }}$ | $S_{r}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \left\{_{0}^{\pi / 2} \cos x \mathrm{dx}\right. \\ & =1.0 \end{aligned}$ | 18 | -1.0006351 | 1.00000032 | -1.00000022 | 0.99999992 |
|  | 19 | -1.0005700 | 1.00000026 | -1.00000017 | 0.99999994 |
|  | 20 | -1.0005144 | 1.00000021 | -1.00000014 | 0.99999995 |
|  | 21 | -1.0004665 | 1.00000017 | -1.00000012 | 0.99999996 |
|  | 22 | -1.0004250 | 1.00000014 | -1.00000010 | 0.99999996 |
|  | 18 | -0.0006351 | 1.00000032 | 0.00001847 | 0.99999991 |
|  | 19 | +0.0005700 | 0.99999961 | 0.00001570 | 0.99999993 |
|  | 20 | -0.0005144 | 1.00000021 | 0.00001346 | 0.99999994 |
|  | 21 | +0.0004665 | 0.99999974 | 0.00001163 | 0.99999995 |
|  | 22 | -0.0004250 | 1.00000014 | 0.00001011 | 0.99999996 |
|  | 23 | +0.0003889 | 0.99999982 | 0.00000885 | 0.99999997 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \left\{_{0}^{1} \mathrm{e}^{\times x} \mathrm{dx}\right. \\ & =1.718282 \end{aligned}$ | 8 | 2.7160480 | 1.71828416 | 2.71843142 | 1.71828105 |
|  | 9 | 2.7144612 | 1.71828540 | 2.71838695 | 1.71828136 |
|  | 10 | 2.7168514 | 1.71828278 | 2.71835827 | 1.71828153 |
|  | 11 | 2.7157231 | 1.71828343 | 2.71833923 | 1.71828163 |
|  | 12 | 2.7172881 | 1.71828229 | 2.71832599 | 1.71828169 |
| $\begin{gathered} \operatorname{erf}(1) \\ =0.8427008 \end{gathered}$ | 8 | -0.8319192 | 0.8427023 | -0.8305305 | 0.8427008 |
|  | 9 | -0.831596 | 0.8427018 | -0.8304458 | 0.8427008 |
|  | 10 | -0.8313535 | 0.8427015 | -0.8303885 | 0.8427008 |
|  | 11 | -0.8311726 | 0.8427013 | -0.8303479 | 0.8427008 |
|  | 12 | -0.8310303 | 0.8427011 | -0.8303202 | 0.8427008 |

TABLE 11.1

In the last example in Table 11.1 the correct value of $F^{\prime}(1)$ to 7D is -0.8302150 .

When the Clenshaw-Negus form of the moment is used it can be seen that the results converge consistently for the values of both $M_{1}$ and $S_{i}$ but, when the simple form of the moment is used, two sequences of values of $M_{1}$ and $S_{1}$ seem to appear, one corresponding to the odd number of intervals and one corresponding to the even number of intervals, and that each sequence converges separately with the sequence corresponding to the even intervals giving the better results.

To show the advantage that can be found from using unequal intervals consider the case where we compute the integral

$$
\left\{_{0}^{2, n} e^{-\infty} d x\right.
$$

using 16 intervals - first when they are all equal to 0.175 and second when they are defined according to the sequence

$$
h_{1}=0.1+(1-1) 0.01 \quad 1=1, \ldots, 16
$$

The results are shown in Table 11.2 :

| EQUAL <br> UREQUAL <br> TRUE | SIMPLE FORM |  | CLEMSHAV REGUS |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | M, | Sr, | M,7 | $\mathrm{S}_{1}$ |
|  | -0.06319964 | 0.93919481 | -0.06080124 | 0.93918869 |
|  | -0.06123427 | 0.93919447 | -0.06078267 | 0.93918890 |
|  | -0.06081006 | 0.93918994 | -0.06081006 | 0.93918994 |

## TABLE 11.2

11.5 DIRECT QUIITIC SPLINE APPROXIMATION TO AN INTEGRAL FUNCTIOI . The obvious next step is to carry the idea of the Direct Spline approximations even further and to investigate the possibilty of deriving the recursive scheme which will give the Direct Quintic Spline approximation to the integral of function $f(x)$.

Proceeding as before, let us define $S^{〔 4>}(x)$ as the linear function

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{(A)}(x)=\frac{P_{1}}{h_{1}}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)+\frac{P_{1-1}}{h_{1}}\left(x_{1}-x\right) \tag{11.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\quad P_{1}=S^{(4)}\left(X_{1}\right)$
If we are given the initial values

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S^{(a\rangle}(a)=P_{0}=f^{(3)}(a) \\
& S^{(a)}(a)=N_{0}=f^{\prime \prime}(a) \\
& S^{\prime \prime}(a)=M_{0}=f^{\prime}(a) \\
& S^{\prime}(a)=f_{0}=f(a) \\
& S(a)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

where $N_{1}=S^{\circ \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ and $M_{1}=S^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$, then, after integrating successively and determining the constants of integration, we will find the recursive scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{1}=\frac{24}{h_{1}^{3}}\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{24}{h_{1}^{2}} M_{i-1}-\frac{12}{h_{1}} H_{1-1}-3 P_{1 \ldots 1} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& H_{1}=N_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(P_{1}+P_{1-1}\right)  \tag{11}\\
& M_{1}=M_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{6}\left(P_{1}+P_{1-1}\right)+h_{1} H_{1-1} \tag{1i1}
\end{align*}
$$

$S_{1} \stackrel{(1 v)}{=} S_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}}{2}\left(f_{1}+f_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{4}\left(M_{1-M_{1-1}}\right)+\frac{h_{1}^{3}}{12}\left(N_{1}+H_{1-1}\right)-\frac{h_{1}^{4}}{80}\left(P_{1}-P_{1-1}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { for } 1=1, \ldots, n \tag{11.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

This recursive scheme is even more unstable than the scheme (11.3) and gives virtually no worthwhile results at all. The obvious cause is the calculation of the highest derivative - $P_{i}$ - and, again, we can try to alleviate this by modifying the schene and find an alternative method of computing the derivatives. The first attempt is to replace (1), (11), and (111) in scheme (11.10) by
(1)

$$
\begin{align*}
& M_{1}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(f_{1}-f_{1-1}\right)-M_{1-1} \\
& N_{1}=\frac{2}{h_{i}}\left(M_{1}-M_{1-1}\right)-N_{1-1} \tag{11}
\end{align*}
$$

(111)

$$
P_{i}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(N_{1}-N_{1-1}\right)-P_{1-1}
$$

and, although this is effective in reducing the instability and results in a convergent computation as $h$ is made smaller, it is still rather crude. Ve can improve this, however, by using these alternative approximations to the derivatives only as first approximations then making successive approximations finding
(1) ' $\quad M_{1}^{\prime}=M_{1-1}+\frac{h_{1}^{2}}{6}\left(P_{1}+2 P_{1-1}\right)+h_{1} N_{1-1}$
(i1) $\quad N_{1}^{\prime}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(M_{1}^{0}-M_{1-1}\right)-N_{1-1}$
(1i1) ${ }^{\prime} \quad P_{1}^{\prime}=\frac{2}{h_{1}}\left(N_{1}^{\prime}-N_{1-1}\right)-P_{1-1}$
Applying the above to compute the integral

$$
\left\{_{0}^{M \pi} \sin x d x\right.
$$

we find that, with interval spacing $h=\pi / 20, S_{5}=0.2928165725$ which gives an error of 0.0000766463 and when we reduce $h$ to $h=$ $\pi / a 0$ we find $S_{10}=0.2928757802$ which gives an error of 0.0000174386 - results which are still not as good as those which can be achieved using the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation !
11.6 GENERALISATION TO HIGHER ORDER DIRECT SPLINE APPROXIMATIONS.

The pattern of the recursive formulae which give us the algorithms for applying the Direct Cubic, Quartic and Quintic Spline approximations becomes familiar. The formula which gives. $S_{1}$ in the Direct Cubic Spline scheme, for instance, shows itself as the formula for $S^{\prime \prime}\left(x_{1}\right)$ in the Direct Quintic Approximation scheme, and it can therefore be predicted that the the formula which will give $S^{\prime \prime}$ ( $x_{1}$ ) in the Direct Sextic Approximation scheme will be of the same form as that which gives $S\left(x_{1}\right)$ in the Direct Quartic Approximation scheme. Thus we can see then that a recursive scheme can be developed quite easily for higher order Direct Spline Approximations
although their efficiency as algorithms for computing the integral is very much in doubt. The problem in the cases of the Direct Quartic and Direct Quintic Approximation schemes , (11.3) and (11.10), respectively, is the computation of the highest order derivatives $-H_{1}$ and $P_{1}$. . The formula which gives the highest order derivative is, in fact, a transposition of the formula which gives the known first derivative of the spline, $S^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right)\left[=f\left(x_{1}\right)\right]$, in terms of the higher derivatives. These formulae are obviously very unstable, particularly for the quintic, while the other formulae in the schemes are, really, very stable.

Let $n S(x)$ be the $n$th degree Direct Spline Approximation to the function $F(x)$ over the interval $[a, b]$, where $F(x)$ is the integral of the function $f(x) \in C^{-1-1}[a, b]$ over the subinterval $[a, x]$ contained in $[a, b]$.

The formula giving ${ }_{n} S(x)$ in the subinterval $\left[x_{1-1}, x_{1}\right]$ can be predicted to be

$$
\left.n S(x)={ }_{n S}\left(x_{1-1}\right)+n S_{1}^{(n-1}\right) \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n}}{n!h_{1}}+(-1)^{n-1}{ }_{r n} S_{i-1}^{n-1} \frac{\left(x_{2}-x\right)^{n}}{n!h_{1}}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& +n S_{i-1}^{(n \cdots 1)} \sum_{r=2}^{n}(-1) r_{1}^{r-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n-r}}{r!(n-r)!} \\
& +\quad \sum_{r=1}^{n-2} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) r}{r!} n S_{1-1}^{c r} \tag{11.11}
\end{align*}
$$

where $n S_{i}^{(r)}$ is the $r$ th derivative of $n S(x)$ at $x=x_{1}$.

We can prove this result (11.11) by Induction. Let us assume that the result is true.
The first derivative of the ( $n+1$ ) th Direct Splne Approximation ${ }_{n+1} S^{\prime}(x)$ - is of the same form as (11.11) with $n+1 S^{\prime}\left(x_{1-1}\right)=f_{1-1}$ and we therefore find :

$$
n+1 S^{\prime}(x)=f_{1-1}+n+1 S_{i}^{(n)} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right){ }^{n}}{n!h_{1}}+(-1) n_{n+1} S_{1-1}^{c} \frac{\left(x_{1}-x\right) n}{n!h_{1}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& +\quad{ }_{n+1} S_{1}^{(r)} \sum_{r=2}^{n}(-1)^{n} h_{1}^{r-} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) n-r}{r!(n-r)!} \\
& +\quad \sum_{r=1}^{n-2} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{r}}{r!} n+1 S_{i-1}^{r+1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

If we then integrate $n+1 S^{\prime}(x)$ with respect to $x$ we will find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& { }_{n+1} S(x)=x_{1-1}+n_{n+1} S_{1}^{n+1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n+1}}{(n+1) n!h_{1}}+(-1)_{n+1} S_{1}^{c} n_{1} \frac{\left(x_{1}-x\right)^{n+1}}{(n+1) n!h_{1}} \\
& +n+1 S_{i}^{(n)} \sum_{r=2}^{n-1}(-1)^{n} h^{r-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n \cdots-r+1}}{(n-r+1) r!(n-r)!}+(-1)_{n+1} S_{1}^{(n)} \frac{h_{1}^{n-1} x}{n!} \\
& +\sum_{r=2}^{n-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n+1}}{(r+1) r!}{ }_{n+1} S_{i-1}^{c+1} ; \quad C_{n+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $C_{\text {ris }}$ is the constant of integration.

At $x=x_{1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
n+1 S\left(x_{1-1}\right) & ={ }_{n+1} S_{1-1}=x_{1-1} f_{1-1}+n+1 S_{1-1}^{(n)} \frac{(-1)^{n} h_{1}^{n+1}}{(n+1)!h_{1}} \\
& +n+1 S_{i-1}^{(n)} \frac{(-1) n_{h_{1}^{n}-1}}{n!} x_{1-1}+C_{n 1}
\end{aligned}
$$

and, transposing this equation to give $C_{n i}$ we find that

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{n 1}= & \left.{ }_{n+1} S_{1-1}-x_{1-1} f_{1-1}+{ }_{n+1} S_{i n}^{(n}\right)^{(-1)^{n+1} h_{1}^{n}} \frac{(n+1)!}{n!} \\
& -{ }_{n+1} S_{i-1}^{(n)} \frac{(-1)^{n} h_{1}^{n-1}}{n!} x_{1-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n+1 S(x)=\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) f_{1-1}+n+1 S_{i}^{(n)} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) n^{n+1}}{(n+1)!h_{1}} \\
& +_{n+1} S_{i-1}^{(n)}(-1)^{n} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!h_{1}} \\
& +n+1 S_{1-1}^{(n)} \sum_{r=2}^{n-1} \quad(-1)^{n} \frac{h^{r-1}\left(x^{-1} x_{1-1}\right)}{r!(n-r+1)!} \\
& +n+1 S_{i=1}^{n}(-1)^{n} \frac{h^{n-1}\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)}{n!}+n+1 S_{i n}^{(n)}(-1) n \frac{h^{n}}{(n+1)!} \\
& +\sum_{r=1}^{n-2} n+S_{i-1}^{(r+1}, \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{r+1}}{(r+1)!}+S_{1-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

The first and seventh terms can be collected to give

$$
\sum_{r=1}^{n-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{i-1}\right)^{r}}{r!}{ }^{n+1} S_{i-1}^{c}
$$

since $f_{i-1}={ }_{n+1} S_{i-1}^{\prime}$, and then the fourth, fifth and sixth terms can also be collected to give

$$
n+1 S_{1-1}^{(n)} \sum_{r=2}^{n+1}(-1) r h_{1}^{r-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right) n+r}{r!(n-r)!}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{align*}
& n+1 S(x)=n+1 S\left(x_{1-1}\right)+n+1 S_{1} n \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!h_{1}} \\
& +n+1 S_{i-1}^{\operatorname{nn})}(-1)^{n} \frac{\left(x_{1}-x\right)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!h_{1}} \\
& +n+1 S_{i-1}^{(n)} \sum_{r=2}^{n+1}(-1)^{r} h_{1-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{1-1}\right)^{n-r}}{r!(n-r)!} \\
& +\sum_{r=1}^{n-1} \frac{\left(x-x_{i-1}\right)^{n}}{r!} r+1 S_{i-1}^{(r)} \tag{11,12}
\end{align*}
$$

Which is the formula (11.10) in which $n+1$ replaces $n$. The formula is true for $n=3$ and $n=4$ hence, by induction, it is true for all $n$.
11.7 COMPUTATIONAL SCHEME FOR NTH ORDER DIRECT SPLINE APPROXIMATION Following along with our theoretical considceration of the nth order spline approximation to an integral function we can develop the computational scheme which is equivalent to the scheme (1.8) for the Direct Cubic Spline even though, when $n \geqslant 4$, their efficiency as an algorithm for computing the integral is in doubt. The scheme is :

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& { }_{n} S_{i}^{(k)}={ }_{n} S_{i-1}^{(k ;}+\frac{h_{i}(n \cdots-1)}{(n-k)!}\left({ }_{n-1}(n \cdots 1)+S_{i-1}^{(n \cdots 1)} \quad \sum_{r=2}^{n-k}(-1) r \frac{(n-k)!}{r!(n-k-r)!},\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { for } k=n-2, \ldots, 1,0 \text {. } \tag{11,13}
\end{align*}
$$

11.8 CORCLUSIONS ON HIGHER ORDER DIRECT SPLINE APPROXIMATIOHS TO IITEGRALS.

None of the schemes of computation for the higher order Direct Spline Approximations investigated in this chapter, and that we have tried, have proved to of any great value when applied to the particular problems that we have chosen. The problem seems to be focussed on the computation of the derivatives, which is not unexpected since the computation of derivatives often does result in instability.
$-12-$
CONCIUSION

The aim of part one of this thesis has been to present a mathematical analysis of the methods of computation in navigation and to effect some new numerical solutions. In the past the methods of computation in navigation have generally been simplified to suit manual computations. However, with the advent of computer software and the introduction of the electronic chart these simplifications can no longer be considered adequate or necessary. As we stated in the introduction, the spherical model for the shape of the Earth is, for most practical purposes in navigation, quite adequate, if used consistently, but, with the computer to do the work for us, the spheroidal model is obviously more fitting and this model has become the focus of our attention. It was considered useful, however, to analyse the properties of the curves on the surface of the spherical Earth model since this simplification serves to illustrate the same pattern of mathematical analysis which we can use to develop the equations for navigating along curves on the surface of the spheroid. All the chapters from chapter 3 onwards contain work which has been published.

The methods of navigation along the arc of a loxodrone are now fully developed for the spheroidal model and most applications embrace this. The single most important aspect of navigating along the arc of the loxodrome is the computation of meridian distance. Carlton Wippern ${ }^{24}$ defines this distance in terms of elliptical integrals since the meridian is but the arc of an ellipse but does not do any actual computation. Bowringse gives a new method which will compute this distance to a very high degree of accuracy but we use the direct cubic spline which, for our purposes gives us the accuracy we require (two decimal places of a geographical mile) at a step length of $5^{\circ}$ in latitude along the meridian and because, in this case, the algorithm is easy to apply.

The great circle method on the spherical model still seems to be the popular method, in practice, of computing the shortest path geodesic arc. This is because the navigator requires more than just the
straight forward computation of distance (the methods for which are well developed for the terrestial spheroid) so that the great circle method bas been the only method avallable which will give the intermediate points along the path of the geodesic. We have therefore presented a solution to the problem of computing the geodesic arc on the surface of the spheroid in a different way by starting from the definition of the geodesic by means of Clairaut's equation. We have solved the equation to give us a relationship between the geocentric latitude and the longitude of a point along the path of the geodesic then, using the step by step method of the Direct Cubic Spline, given the step values in the longitude, we have found the corresponding values of the latitude and the distance along the geodesic arc between them. Ve have applied this same method to the shortest path problems on the surfaces of both the sphere and the spheroid and, in the case of the sphere, the algorithm is quick, efficient and in every way comparable with the methods of spherical trigonometry. In its application to the surface of the spheroid the algorithm for doing this has also proved to be simple and efficient even though it involves a fair number of iterations. The results can be condensed neatly as shown in Table 4.1, chapter 4, for the sphere and Table 5.1, Chapter 5, for the spheroid. The positions from these tables can be plotted on a chart to give visual representations of the paths. If the chart is a standard paper chart then the way points can be plotted and the usual convention would then be to join the way pointe with short rhumb lines. Ve can expect, however, that the electronic chart will soon be in general use and the application can be refined considerably. On the electronic chart we will be able to represent the portions of the geodesic between the way points by curved arcs. Indeed, the relevant way to do this will be to fit a conventional cubic spline approximation between the end points of the geodesic arc with the way points as the "knots" of the spline.

In chapters 5,6 and 7 , we belleve that we have presented a full analysis of the solution by a direct method of the problem of computing the path of geodesic arcs on the surface of a spheroid. We
have defined our distances along the arcs of the geodesics by line integrals computed using the method of the direct cubic spline approximation. All the results have, we believe, been computed correct to the first decimal place of a geographical mile. For the purposes of navigation, either in the air or at sea, this is adequate. In the future this computed solution can be linked with an elecronic position fixing system so that, from the input of the observed position, the path to the destination, initial course and distance, with its intermediate way points can be quickly updated at any time. In coastal navigation, where course lines are all short arcs of a loxodrome, this is done already with the Decca Mavigator system. In a system designed for navigating world wide a choice of routes - loxodromic, geodesic or composite - can be offered from any observed position to the destination.

Although the methods of analysis and computation of the properties of geodesic and loxodromic arcs have been developed with the problem of navigating on the surface of the Earth uppermost in the nind the methods are not strictly "Earthbound" at all. The analysis is general to any ellipsoidal surface. Should it soon be possible in a space vehicle to skim the surface of an outer planet where the flattening of the surface is more pronounced, then, by our methods, for navigational purposes, we will be able to compute the path of the geodesic or loxodromic arcs on such a surface also. For the shortest path geodesic arc between two points on a surface such as Jupiter, for instance, where the eccentricity of the meridian ellipse is approximately equal to 0.3 , then, the initial approximation to the path which we can use for the iterative procedures in the computation will be the "great ellipse" - the ellipse defined by the intersection of the surface with a plane through the two points and the centre of the ellipsoid.

At first sight it might seem that our achievement in chapter 8 is simply a tidy representation of the formulae that are used in astronomical navigation and, that, since astronomical navigation is, to sone extent, only a sideshow these days, little has been achieved
by it. There is, however, a little more to it than that. A work of philosophy must contain some elements which are there because, if little else, they present an interesting theoretical problem but, even so, this is not entirely the case in chapter 8 . The consequences of the distortion in the transferred position circle are worth noting and, in the past, might well have caused some problems for polar navigators because it is close to the pole that this distortion 15 most pronounced. At some stage on the polar Journey it must be necessary to travel at an oblique angle to the meridians and, since the sun is the only astronomical body visible, transferred position circles must have been used to fix position. It would be interesting to analyse the results from such abservations that were taken by polar explorers and to see whether or not, in general, such allowances were made.

We have not made any mention of the way in which astronomical observations are affected by the spheroidal shape of the Earth. In truth the position "circle" is the locus of intersection of the surface of a cone and the surface of the spheroid. It would appear that the cone has its apex at the centre of curvature of the spheroid at the point which is the geographical position of the observed body and its axis is along the corresponding radius of curvature. The position "circle" is not, therefore, in general, a circle. The observer's position when two simultaneous observations are taken is then at a point of intersection of three surfaces - two cones which are defined by the astrononical observations and the surface of the spheroid. This problem 15 now being studied with the purpose of finding out whether there is a solution which will give worthwhile results to the navigator.

In chapter 9 we concern ourselves with computing position from the observation of a single astronomical body over a short period of time. This method would have an application at sea in good observing conditions and would give positions which should be better than the running fix but it is implicit that the computations are only possible using a powerful computing device. It is, however, in the
possibility of mechanisation that this method might find its place. Judging by the demonstrations of the accuracy of gyroscopic stabilisation that have been made recently in weapons technology it might be more than just feasible to design an instrument which can lock on to a source such as the sun or a star and measure the instantaneous altitude and its rate of change. From this the observer's position can be computed, automatically, by the method given in chapter 9 and displayed for the observer. This is only conjecture, of course, but one is lead to believe that this should be possible. Such a system, if it is feasible, would reduce the reliance on the orbits of the man made sattelites.

Part two of the thesis has been devoted to the Direct Spline Approximations to integrals. Chapter 10 is concerned exclusively with the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation and it is this approximation to integrals that is applied to such good effect throughout part one. The method is a step by step method and is particularly effective in application to line integrals because of the in built property of generating points along the path. One disadvantage of the method in this respect, however, is that it does not converge very rapidly as the interval length is decreased.

We have shown that the direct cubic spline is a generalisation of Simpson's Rule and a truncated approximation of Buler's Integral Expansion method. It has the distinct advantage too of being within the realm of manual computation. The requirement that the derivative at one boundary should be known is not, in fact, too much of a disadvantage to the method. In our applications we have found many cases where the derivative, or a sinple approximation to it, have been easily found. While, in theory, an approximation to the derivative will reduce the order of the error bound it is not a serious practical consideration. If we are to strictly maintain the step by step property of the method it does sometimes mean that in the absence of true value of the derivative we might have to make a linear approximation, but, in general, we are not so reatricted in practice. In the case of the geodesic arcs, for instance, we know
our destination and can therefore choose the intermediate points in advance. In the computer program to compute the length of the geodesic arc passing through these intermediate points we begin by fitting a lagrange cubic polynomial to the first four intermediate points and we have differentiated this Lagrange polynomial to find a quadratic approximation to the derivative.

In Chapter 11 we hope to carry the idea of the Direct Cubic Spline into the development of higher order direct spiine approximations to integrals. We have generated the formulae which will, by the same analysis, give us expressions for these higher order direct splines but, except in the case of the Direct Quartic Spline, we have not demonstrated that there are any useful algorithms. For the most part, then, at the moment, this chapter $1 s$ just a theoretical demonstration which is left as an open question. For the direct quartic spline the "moments" of the spline are provided for us by the limiting form of the $X$-spline developed by Clenshaw and Fegussz. The integral formula in the direct quartic spline is, however, exactly the same as that in the direct cubic spline and this is general for all the higher even order direct splines - the integral formula is the same as that of the next lower odd order direct spline.

There are other particular areas of study where the direct spline approximations have a relevant application. We are also using these methods in the theory of ship stability where the evaluation of integrals with known boundary derivatives are comonly required. As a professional navigator it has been particularly rewarding, however, to find that the direct cublc spline has. been so particularly useful in the science of navigation.

- REFERENCES -

1. W. M. SMART: "On a Problem in Navigation" - Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society 106,2,pp124-127. (1946)
2. R. WILLIAMS: "A Table of Latitude Parts" - Journal of Navigation 34,247 (1981)
3. KITT C. CARLTON WIPPERN: "On Loxodromic Navigation" - Journal of Navigation 45, 292 (1992)
4. P.D. THOMAS: "Mathematical Models For Navigation Sytems" - U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office, Wash1ngton D.C. (October 1965).
5. E.FICHOT: "Sur Les Systemes Geodesiques Equaliteres a la Surface du Spheroide Terrestre" - Annales Hydrographique pp 99-192 (1926)
6. W. D. LAMBERT: "The Distance Between Two Widely Separated Points on the Surface of the Earth" - Journal of the Vashington Academy of Science 32, 125 (1942)
7. B. R. BOVRING: "The Geodesic Inverse Problem" - Bulletin Geodesique 57, 109 (1983)
8. R. VILLIAMS: "Computation of an Astronomical Running Fix" Journal of Navigation 43, 3 (1990)
9. Matti RaNTA: "Position Fixing in a Fast Moving Ship by Culmination of a Celestial Body" - Journal of Navigation - 44,2 (1990)
10. R. WILLIAMS: "Position by Observation of a Single Body" - Journal of Navigation - 47,1 (1994)
11. G. E. FORSYTHE: "Generation and Use of Orthogonal Polynomials for Data Fitting with a Digital Computer" - Journal of Industrial Applied Mathematics" 5. 2 (1957)
12. NATHANIEL BOWDITCH - "The American Practical Navigator." - Defense Mapping Agency Hydrographic Center (US) - Pub Ho. 9 (1977)
13. CHARLES H.COTTER - "The Astronomical and Mathematical Foundations of Geography" - Hollis and Carter.
14. G. BOMFORD - "Geodesy" - OUP
15. MARTIN. M. LIFSCHUTZ - "Differential Yeometry" - Schaum MacGraw Hill (1969)
16. DIRK J. STRUICK - "Lectures in Classical Differential Geometry" Dover (1988)
17. NORIES NAUTICAL TABLES - Imray, Norie W1lson (1948)
18. NORIES NAUTICAL TABLES - Imray, Norie \& Wilson (1954)
19. INMANS NAUTICAL TABLES - J.D.Potter (London 1952)
20. R. WILLIAMS: "A Table of Latitude Parts" - Journal of Navigation 34,247 (1981)
21. D.H.SADLER: "Rhumb Line Navigation" - Journal of Navigation 9,371 (1956)
22. J.E.D.VILLIAMS: "Loxodromic D1stances On The Terestial Spheroid" - Journal of Navigation 3, 133 (1950)
23. T.HAIRAWA: "On Modification Of Sailing Calculations" - Journal of Navigation 40,138 (1987)
24. KITT C.CARLTON WIPPERN: "On Loxodromic Navigation" - Journal of Navigation 45, 292 (1992)
25. LYUSTERNIK L.A. "Shortest Faths" - Pergammon Press (1964)
26. BELL R.J.T. "Coordinate Geometry of Three Dimensions" MacMillan ( )
27. WILLIAMS. R. "A Step by Step Method of Computing Points Along the Arc of a Great Circle" - Journal of Navigation (Vol 46, Na. 2 May 1993)
28. AKDOYER H. "Formule Donnant la Longeur de la Geodesique Joignant Deux Points de l'Ellipsoide donnes Par leur Coordonnes Geographique." Bulletin Geodesique , 34,77 (1932)
29. LAMBERT W.D. "The Distance Between two Widely Separated Points on the Surface of the Earth" Journal of the Washington Academy of Science - 32, 125 (1942)
30. WILLIAMS R PHYTHIAN J.E. "Navigating Along Geodesic Paths on the Surface of a Spheroid" - Journal of Navigation - 42, 129 (1989)
31. BOURBON R. $\quad$ Geodesic Line On The Surface Of A Spheroid" Journal of Navigation 43.1 (1990)
32. TODHUNTER I "A History of The Mathematical Theories of Attraction and the Figure of the Earth" - Dover (1962)
33. HELMERT "Die Mathematischen und Physikalischen Theorieen der hoheren Geodesie" Chapters 5 * 7 - Leipzig (1880)
34. FICHOT E.
"Sur les systemes geodesiques equilateres a la surface du spheroide terreste." - Annales Hydrographiques (sr 3) 4: 99, 1921
35. GLASSTONE S. "Sourcebook On The Space Sciences" - Van Noorstrand (in cooperation with NASA) (1965)
36. WILLIAMS $R$ \& PHYTHIAN J.E. "The Shortest Distance Between Two Nearly Antipodean Points on the Surface of a Spheroid" - Journal of Navigation 45.1, 114 (1992).
37. MARGARET GOW - "A Coures In Pure Mathematics" - English Universities Press (1960)
38. ARTURO \& RAFAELE CHIESA _ "A Mathematical Method of Obtaining an Astronomical Vessel Position" - Journal of Navigation 43,1 (1990)
39. BERNARD SPENCER - "Astronomical Fixes Vithout an Assumed Position" - Journal of Navigation 43.3 (1990)
40. ROY WILLIAMS - "Computation of an Astronomical Running Fix" Journal of Navigation 43, 3 (1990)
41. JAMES . N. WILSON - "Position From Observation Of A Single Body" "Mavigation" - Journal of the American Institute of Navigation - Vol 321985.
42. MATTI RANTA - "Position Fixing In A Fast Moving Ship By Culmination Of A Celestial Body" - Journal of Navigation The Royal Institute of Navigation - Vol 44,2 1991.
43. GEORGE E. FORSYTHE - "Generation and use of Orthogonal Polynonials for Data-fitting with a Digital computer." -

Journal of Industrial Applied Mathematics" Vol 5 No. 2, June 1957
44. PERCY.L.H.DAVIS - "Altitude - Azimuth Tables" - HNSO (1918)
45. WILLIAMS R. "Double Integration Using Cubic Splines" - Bachelor of Philosophy Thesis - 1982 - Open University Library - Chapter 3.
46. DAVIS P.J. RABINOWITZ P. "Methods of Numerical Integration" Academic Press (1975).
47. AHLBERG J.H., NILSON E.N. \& WALSH J.L. " The Theory of Splines and their Applications" - Academic Press (1967).
48. PRENTER P.M. "Splines and Varlational Methods" - John Wiley ans (1975).
49. PHYTHIAN J.E. \& WILLIAMS R. "Cubic Spline Aproxination to an Integral Function" - Bulletin of the Institute of Mathematics \& its Applications - Volume 21 July/August 1985 - pp 130 \& 131.
50. SCHEID F. "Numerical Analysis" - Schaum MacGraw Hill - 1968.
51. PHYTHIAN J.E. *ILLIAMS R. "Some Relationships between the Direct Cubic Spline Approximation and other Integration Formulae" Bulletin of the Institute of Mathematics and its Applications Vol 24 $9 \& 10$ (1988)
52. CLENSHAW C.W. * NEGUS B. "The Cubic X-Spline and its Application to Interpolation" Journal of the Institute of Mathematics and its Applications 22 (1978) pp109-119.
53. BOWRING B.R. "New Equations For Meridian Distance" - Bulletin Geodesique (1984)
$A P P E N D I X 1$
TRANSFIORMATIQN DF EQQUTION < S. 4> TO EQLTATION < S.

Using the substitutions $x=a \theta \quad y=a \tan$ ve find $d x=a d \theta$ and $d y=a \sec ^{2} d d$ Ve also have $\quad$ lan $=\frac{y}{a} \quad \sin =\frac{y}{\sqrt{\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)}} \quad \cos 1=\frac{a}{\sqrt{\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)}}$ and $\sec ^{2} y=\frac{i^{2}+y^{2}}{a^{2}} \quad$ so that $\quad d y=\frac{a^{2}+y^{2}}{a} d y \quad$ and $d y=\frac{\cos ^{2} d}{a} d y$ The equation $a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}\left(\frac{d Q}{d s}\right)=a_{v} \cos l_{v}$ nay be vritien $a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \| d \theta=\lambda d s$ where we have vritten $\lambda=\operatorname{arcos} \mathrm{fv}$.

Squaring this equation and substiluting $d s^{2}=a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}\left\{d \theta^{2}+a_{p}^{2} \sec ^{2}(p-1) d f^{2}\right.$ we find

$$
a_{p}^{4} \cos ^{4} \phi d \theta^{2}=\lambda^{2}\left[a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2} \phi d \theta^{2}+a_{p}^{2} \sec ^{2}(\psi-\phi) d \phi^{2}\right]=\lambda^{2} \cos ^{2} \phi\left[a_{p}^{2} d \theta^{2}+a_{p}^{2} \frac{\cos ^{2} \phi}{a^{2}} d \gamma^{2}\right]
$$

Dividing through by $a_{p}^{2} \cos ^{2}$ and substituting for $\cos ^{2}$ fron above ve find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{a_{p}^{2} a^{2}}{\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)} d \theta^{2}=\lambda^{2}\left[d \theta^{2}+\sec ^{2}(y-1) \frac{d y^{2}}{\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)}\right] \text { which, after rearranging, gives } \\
& \cos ^{2}(y-1)\left[a_{p}^{2} a^{2}-\lambda^{2}\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)\right] d \theta^{2}=\lambda^{2} d y^{2} \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots(A \mid, 1)
\end{aligned}
$$

Fron the equation $\tan =\left(1-e^{2}\right)$ tan $\psi \quad$ ve find $\quad \operatorname{lan}=\frac{y}{\left(1-e^{2}\right)} \quad \cos =\frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}}$
and $\quad \sin \psi=\frac{y}{\sqrt{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}} \quad$ Using these results we find

$$
\cos ^{2}(1-1)=\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)}
$$

Now $\quad \lambda^{2}=a^{2} \cos ^{2} \eta_{v}=\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\left(1-e^{2} \cos ^{2} \gamma_{v}\right)} \cos ^{2} h_{v}=\frac{a^{4}\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y_{v}^{2}\right]}$

Also $\quad a_{p}^{2}=\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{\left(1-e^{2} \cos ^{2} \phi\right)}=\frac{a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)\left(a^{2}+y^{2}\right)}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}$

Substituting ( $A 1,2$ ) , $(A 1,3)$ and $(A 1,4)$ into $(A 1,1)$ and rearringing results in

$$
d y^{2}=\frac{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)+y^{2}\right]}{\left[a^{2}\left(1-e^{2}\right)^{2}+y^{2}\right]}\left(y_{v}^{2}-y^{2}\right) d \theta^{2}
$$

as required.

## APPENDIX $\geq$ <br> A table of latitude parts

|  | ${ }^{\circ}$ | 10 | 20 | $30^{\circ}$ | 40 | 50 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0.00 ${ }^{-}$ | 9.93- | $19.86^{-1}$ | $2 \overline{9} . \overline{8} \overline{0}^{-}$ | $\overline{3} \overline{9} . \overline{8} \overline{7}^{-}$ | $4 \overline{9} .6 \overline{6} \overline{6}^{-}$ |
| 1 | 59.59 | 69.53 | 79.46 | 89.39 | 99.32 | 109.26 |
| 2 | 119.19 | 129.12 | 139.05 | 148.99 | 158.92 | 168.85 |
| 3 | 178.78 | 188.72 | 198.65 | 208.58 | 218.58 | 228.45 |
| 4 | 238.38 | 248.31 | 258.25 | 268.18 | 278.11 | 288.04 |
| 5 | 297.98 | 307.91 | 317.84 | 327.78 | 337.71 | 347.64 |
| 6 | 357.58 | 367.51 | 377.44 | 387.38 | 397.31 | 407.24 |
| 7 | 417.18 | 427.11 | 437.05 | 446.98 | 456.91 | 466.85 |
| 8 | 476.78 | 486.72 | 496.65 | 506.59 | 516.52 | 526.45 |
| 9 | 536.39 | 546.32 | 556.26 | 566.19 | 576.13 | 586.06 |
| 10 | 596.00 | 605.94 | 615.87 | 625.81 | 635.74 | 645.68 |
| 11 | 655.61 | 665.55 | 675.49 | 685.42 | 695.36 | 705.29 |
| 12 | 715.23 | 725.17 | 735.11 | 745. 04 | 754.98 | 764.92 |
| 13 | 774.85 | 784.79 | 794.73 | 804.67 | 814.60 | 824.54 |
| 14 | 834.48 | 844.42 | 854.36 | 864.30 | 874.23 | 884.17 |
| 15 | 894.11 | 904.05 | 913.99 | 923.93 | 933.87 | 943.81 |
| 16 | 953.75 | 963.69 | 973.63 | 983.57 | 993.51 | 1003. 45 |
| 17 | 1013.39 | 1023.33 | 1033.27 | 1043.22 | 1053.16 | 1063.10 |
| 18 | 1073.04 | 1082.98 | 1092.93 | 1102.87 | 1112.81 | 1122.75 |
| 19 | 1132.70 | 1142.64 | 1152.58 | 1162.53 | 1172.47 | 1182.41 |
| 20 | 1192.36 | 1202.30 | 1212.25 | 1222.19 | 1232.14 | 1242.08 |
| 21 | 1252.03 | 1261.97 | 1271.92 | 1281.86 | 1291.81 | 1301.75 |
| 22 | 1311.70 | 1321.65 | 1331.59 | 1341.54 | 1351.49 | 1361.44 |
| 23 | 1371.38 | 1381.33 | 1391.28 | 1401.23 | 1411.18 | 1421.12 |
| 24 | 1431.07 | 1441.02 | 1450.97 | 1460.92 | 1470.87 | 1480.82 |
| 25 | 1490.77 | 1500.72 | 1510.67 | 1520.62 | 1530.57 | 1540.53 |
| 26 | 1550.48 | 1560.43 | 1570.38 | 1580.33 | 1590.29 | 1600.24 |
| 27 | 1610.19 | 1620.15 | 1630.10 | 1640.05 | 1650.01 | 1659.96 |
| 28 | 1669.92 | 1679.87 | 1689.82 | 1699.78 | 1709.74 | 1719.69 |
| 29 | 1729.65 | 1739.60 | 1749.56 | 1759.52 | 1769.47 | 1779.43 |
| 30 | 1789.39 | 1799.35 | 1809.30 | 1819.26 | 1829.22 | 1839. 18 |
| 31 | 1849.14 | 1859.10 | 1869.06 | 1879.02 | 1888.98 | 1898.94 |
| 32 | 1908.90 | 1918.86 | 1928.82 | 1938.78 | 1948.74 | 1958.70 |
| 33 | 1968.67 | 1978.63 | 1988.59 | 1998.55 | 2008. 52 | 2018.48 |
| 34 | 2028.45 | 2038.41 | 2048.37 | 2058. 34 | 2068. 30 | 2078.27 |
| 35 | 2088.23 | 2098. 20 | 2108.17 | 2118.13 | 2128.10 | 2138.07 |
| 36 | 2148.03 | 2158.00 | 2167.97 | 2177.94 | 2187.90 | 2197.87 |
| 37 | 2207.84 | 2217.81 | 2227.78 | 2237.75 | 2247.72 | 2257.69 |
| 38 | 2267.66 | 2277.63 | 2287.60 | 2297.57 | 2307.54 | 2317.52 |
| 39 | 2327.49 | 2337.46 | 2347.43 | 2357.41 | 2367.38 | 2377.35 |
| 40 | 2387.33 | 2397.30 | 2407.28 | 2417.25 | 2427.23 | 2437.20 |
| 41 | 2447.18 | 2457.15 | 2467.13 | 2477.11 | 2487.08 | 2497.06 |
| 42 | 2507.04 | 2517.02 | 2526.99 | 2536.97 | 2546.95 | 2556.93 |
| 43 | 2566.91 | 2576.89 | 2586.87 | 2596.85 | 2606.83 | 2616.81 |
| 44 | 2626.79 | 2636.77 | 2646.75 | 2656.74 | 2666.72 | 2676.70 |
| 45 | 2686.68 | 2696.67 | 2706.65 | 2716.63 | 2726.62 | 2736.60 |
| 46 | 2746.59 | 2756.57 | 2766.56 | 2776.54 | 2786.53 | 2796.51 |
| 47 | 2806.50 | 2816.49 | 2826.47 | 2836.46 | 2846.45 | 2856.44 |
| 48 | 2866.42 | 2876.41 | 2886.40 | 2896.39 | 2906.38 | 2916.37 |
| 49 | 2926.36 | 2936.35 | 2946. 34 | 2956.33 | 2966.32 | 2976.31 |
| 50 | 2986.31 | 2996.30 | 3006.29 | 3016.28 | 3026. 27 | 3036.27 |
| 51 | 3046.26 | 3056.25 | 3066.25 | 3076.24 | 3086.24 | 3096.23 |
| 52 | 3106.23 | 3116.22 | 3126.22 | 3136.21 | 3146.21 | 3156.21 |
| 53 | 3166.20 | 3176.20 | 3186.20 | 3196.20 | 3206.19 | 3216.19 |
| 54 | 3226.19 | 3236.19 | 3246.19 | 3256.19 | 3266.19 | 3276.19 |
| 55 | 3286. 19 | 3296. 19 | 3306.19 | 3316.19 | 3326.19 | 3336.19 |
| 56 | 3346.20 | 3356.20 | 3366.20 | 3376.20 | 3386.21 | 3396.21 |
| 57 | 3406.21 | 3416.22 | 3426.22 | 3436.22 | 3446.23 | 3456.23 |
| 58 | 3466.24 | 3476.24 | 3486.25 | 3496.26 | 3506.26 | 3516.27 |
| 59 | 3526.28 | 3536.28 | 3546.29 | 3556.30 | 3566.31 | 3576.31 |
| 60 | 3586.32 | 3596.33 | 3606.34 | 3616.35 | 3626.36 | 3636.37 |
| 61 | 3646.38 | 3656.39 | 3666.40 | 3676.41 | 3686.42 | 3696.43 |
| 62 | 3706.44 | 3716.45 | 3726.46 | 3736.48 | 3746.49 | 3756.50 |
| 63 | 3766.51 | 3776.53 | 3786.54 | 3796.55 | 3806.57 | 3816.58 |

## APPENDIX 3

SOME RESUITS
SPHERICAI TRIGONOMETRY

A spherical triangle on the surface of a sphere is defined by the area enclosed by the intersection of three great circles. Figure A3. 1 shows the spherical triangle with vertices $A, B$ and $C$ which are the points of intersection of the three great circles the arcs of which are $A B(=c)$, $B C(=a)$ and $C A(=b), a, b$ and $c$ are expressed as angles where $a$, for instance, is the angle subtended at the centre of the sphere by the arc BC.


The SPHERICAL COSINE FORMULAE read
$\cos a=\cos b \cos c+\sin b \sin c \cos A$
or $\cos b=\cos a \cos c+\sin a \sin c \cos B$
or
$\cos c=\cos a \cos b+\sin a \sin b \cos C$
and, interchanging angles for sides we find also
$\cos A=\sin B \sin C \cos a-\cos B \cos C$
or $\quad \cos B=\sin A \sin C \cos b-\cos A \cos C$
or $\quad \cos C=\sin A \sin B \cos C-\cos A \cos B$

The SPHERICAL SINE FORMULAE read

$$
\frac{\sin a}{\sin A}=\frac{\sin b}{\sin B}=\frac{\sin c}{\sin C}
$$

These results are proved in the book by Margaret Gow ${ }^{37}$.


[^0]:    fIGURE 8.3 - POSITION CIRCLE ON THE SURFACE OF THE SPHERICAL EARTH.

